

NZMATH User Manual

(for version 3.0.3)

Contents

1	Overview	21
1.1	Introduction	21
1.1.1	Philosophy – Advantages over Other Systems	21
1.1.1.1	Open Source Software	21
1.1.1.2	Speed of Development	22
1.1.1.3	Bridging the Gap between Users And Developers	22
1.1.1.4	Link with Other Softwares	22
1.1.2	Information	22
1.1.3	Installation	23
1.1.3.1	Installation of Python	23
1.1.3.2	Note about Python 2	23
1.1.3.3	Install NZMATH from PyPI	24
1.1.3.4	Install NZMATH from Local Archives	24
1.1.4	Tutorial	24
1.1.4.1	Sample Session	25
1.1.5	Note on the Document	27
2	Basic Utilities	28
2.1	config – setting features	28
2.1.1	Default Settings	28
2.1.1.1	Dependencies	28
2.1.1.2	Plug-ins	28
2.1.1.3	Assumptions	29
2.1.1.4	Files	29
2.1.2	Automatic Configuration	29
2.1.2.1	Checks	29
2.1.3	User Settings	30
2.2	bigrandom – random numbers	30
2.2.1	random – random number generator	30
2.2.2	randrange – random integer generator	31
2.3	bigrange – range-like generator functions	32
2.3.1	count – count up	32
2.3.2	arithmetic_progression – arithmetic progression iterator	32
2.3.3	geometric_progression – geometric progression iterator	32

2.3.4	multirange – multiple range iterator	32
2.3.5	multirange_restrictions – multiple range iterator with restrictions	33
2.4	compatibility – Keep compatibility between Python versions . . .	34
2.4.1	set, frozenset	34
2.4.2	card(virtualset)	34
3	Functions	35
3.1	algorithm – basic number theoretic algorithms	35
3.1.1	digital_method – univariate polynomial evaluation	35
3.1.2	digital_method_func – function of univariate polynomial evaluation	35
3.1.3	rl_binary_powering – right-left powering	36
3.1.4	lr_binary_powering – left-right powering	36
3.1.5	window_powering – window powering	36
3.1.6	powering_func – function of powering	37
3.2	arith1 - miscellaneous arithmetic functions	38
3.2.1	floorsqrt – floor of square root	38
3.2.2	floorpowerroot – floor of some power root	38
3.2.3	legendre - Legendre(Jacobi) Symbol	38
3.2.4	modsqrt – square root of a for modulo p	38
3.2.5	expand – m -adic expansion	38
3.2.6	inverse – inverse	39
3.2.7	CRT – Chinese Remainder Theorem	39
3.2.8	CRT_ – Chinese Remainder Theorem (moduli fixed) . . .	39
3.2.9	CRT_Gauss – Chinese Remainder Theorem by Gauss . .	40
3.2.10	AGM – Arithmetic Geometric Mean	40
3.2.11	vp – p -adic valuation	40
3.2.12	issquare - Is it square?	40
3.2.13	log – integer part of logarithm	41
3.2.14	product – product of some numbers	41
3.3	arygcd – binary-like gcd algorithms	42
3.3.1	bit_num – the number of bits	42
3.3.2	binarygcd – gcd by the binary algorithm	42
3.3.3	arygcd_i – gcd over gauss-integer	42
3.3.4	arygcd_w – gcd over Eisenstein-integer	42
3.4	combinatorial – combinatorial functions	44
3.4.1	binomial – binomial coefficient	44
3.4.2	combinationIndexGenerator – iterator for combinations .	44
3.4.3	factorial – factorial	44
3.4.4	permutationGenerator – iterator for permutation	44
3.4.5	fallingfactorial – the falling factorial	45
3.4.6	risingfactorial – the rising factorial	45
3.4.7	multinomial – the multinomial coefficient	45
3.4.8	bernoulli – the Bernoulli number	45
3.4.9	catalan – the Catalan number	45

3.4.10	dyck_word_generator – generator for Dyck words	45
3.4.11	euler – the Euler number	46
3.4.12	bell – the Bell number	46
3.4.13	stirling1 – Stirling number of the first kind	46
3.4.14	stirling2 – Stirling number of the second kind	47
3.4.15	partition_number – the number of partitions	47
3.4.16	partitionGenerator – iterator for partition	47
3.4.17	partition_conjugate – the conjugate of partition	47
3.5	cubic_root – cubic root, residue, and so on	50
3.5.1	c_root_p – cubic root mod p	50
3.5.2	c_residue – cubic residue mod p	50
3.5.3	c_symbol – cubic residue symbol for Eisenstein-integers	50
3.5.4	decompose_p – decomposition to Eisenstein-integers	50
3.5.5	cornacchia – solve $x^2 + dy^2 = p$	51
3.6	cyclotomic – cyclotomic polynomial and related topics	52
3.6.1	cycloPoly – the cyclotomic polynomial explicitly	52
3.6.2	cycloMoebius – the cyclotomic polynomial by Möbius function	52
3.7	ecpp – elliptic curve primality proving	54
3.7.1	ecpp – elliptic curve primality proving	54
3.7.2	hilbert – Hilbert class polynomial	54
3.7.3	dedekind – Dedekind’s eta function	54
3.7.4	cmm – CM method	55
3.7.5	cmm_order – CM method with order	55
3.7.6	cornacchiamodify – Modified cornacchia algorithm	55
3.8	equation – solving equations, congruences	57
3.8.1	e1 – solve equation with degree 1	57
3.8.2	e1_ZnZ – solve congruent equation modulo n with degree 1	57
3.8.3	e2 – solve equation with degree 2	57
3.8.4	e2_Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p with degree 2	58
3.8.5	e3 – solve equation with degree 3	58
3.8.6	e3_Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p with degree 3	58
3.8.7	liftup_ZpnZ – congruence modulo prime to power of prime	59
3.8.8	allroots_ZnZ – all solutions of any polynomial congruence	59
3.8.9	Newton – solve equation using Newton’s method	59
3.8.10	SimMethod – find all roots simultaneously	60
3.8.11	root_Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p	60
3.8.12	allroots_Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p	60
3.9	gcd – gcd algorithm	62
3.9.1	gcd – the greatest common divisor	62
3.9.2	binarygcd – binary gcd algorithm	62
3.9.3	extgcd – extended gcd algorithm	62
3.9.4	lcm – the least common multiple	62
3.9.5	gcd_of_list – gcd of many integers	63
3.9.6	extgcd – extended divmodl gcd for many integers	63
3.9.7	divmodl – division of minimum absolute remainder	63

3.9.8	extgcd_gen – general solution of linear diophantine equation	64
3.9.9	gcd_ – the GCD of many integers by modl division	64
3.9.10	modl – least absolute value remainder by division	64
3.9.11	lcm_ – the LCM of integers by repeating gcd_	64
3.9.12	coprime – coprime check	65
3.9.13	pairwise_coprime – coprime check of many integers	65
3.9.14	part_frac – partial fraction decomposition	65
3.10	multiplicative – multiplicative number theoretic functions	67
3.10.1	euler – the Euler totient function	67
3.10.2	moebius – the Möbius function	67
3.10.3	sigma – sum of divisor powers)	67
3.11	prime – primality test , prime generation	69
3.11.1	trialDivision – trial division test	69
3.11.2	spsp – strong pseudo-prime test	69
3.11.3	smallSpsp – strong pseudo-prime test for small number	69
3.11.4	miller – Miller’s primality test	69
3.11.5	millerRabin – Miller-Rabin primality test	69
3.11.6	lpsp – Lucas test	70
3.11.7	fpsp – Frobenius test	70
3.11.8	by_primitive_root – Lehmer’s test	70
3.11.9	full_euler – Brillhart & Selfridge’s test	70
3.11.10	apr – Jacobi sum test	71
3.11.11	aks – Cyclotomic Congruence test	71
3.11.12	primeq – primality test automatically	71
3.11.13	prime – n -th prime number	71
3.11.14	nextPrime – generate next prime	72
3.11.15	randPrime – generate random prime	72
3.11.16	eratosthenes – primes <i>list</i> by Eratosthenes sieve	72
3.11.17	generator – generate primes	72
3.11.18	generator_eratosthenes_ – generate primes by the most naive Eratosthenes sieve	72
3.11.19	generator_eratosthenes – generate primes using Eratos- thenes sieve	72
3.11.20	primonial – product of primes	73
3.11.21	primitive_root – primitive root	73
3.11.22	Lucas_chain – Lucas sequence	73
3.11.23	LucasLehmer – test for Mersenne prime	73
3.12	prime_decomp – prime decomposition	75
3.12.1	prime_decomp – prime decomposition	75
3.13	residue – Primitive Roots and Power Residues	76
3.13.1	primRootDef – the primitive roots of a prime	76
3.13.2	primitive_root – the least positive primitive root of a prime	76
3.13.3	primRootTakagi – a primitive root of a prime	76
3.13.4	primitiveRoots – primes and their primitive roots	76
3.13.5	primitiveRoots2 – primes p and their primitive roots by factoring $p - 1$	76

3.13.6	primitiveRootPW_ – half of primitive root powers	77
3.13.7	primitiveRootPW – primitive root powers	77
3.13.8	primitiveRootOPW – primitive root powers directly	77
3.13.9	primitiveRootIX – primitive root index table	77
3.13.10	primitiveRootGet – primitive root data	78
3.13.11	primitiveRootPWGet – primitive root powers data	78
3.14	quad – Imaginary Quadratic Field	79
3.14.1	ReducedQuadraticForm – Reduced Quadratic Form Class	79
3.14.1.1	inverse	80
3.14.1.2	disc	80
3.14.2	ClassGroup – Class Group Class	80
3.14.3	class_formula	81
3.14.4	class_number	81
3.14.5	class_group	81
3.14.6	class_number_bsgs	81
3.14.7	class_group_bsgs	82
3.15	round2 – the round 2 method	83
3.15.1	ModuleWithDenominator – bases of $\mathbb{Z}$ -module with de- nominator.	84
3.15.1.1	get_rationals – get the bases as a list of rationals	85
3.15.1.2	get_polynomials – get the bases as a list of poly- nomials	85
3.15.1.3	determinant – determinant of the bases	85
3.15.2	round2(function)	86
3.15.3	Dedekind(function)	86
3.16	sequence – mathematical sequences	87
3.16.1	generator_fibonacci – generator of Fibonacci numbers . .	87
3.16.2	fibonacci – Fibonacci numbers	87
3.17	squarefree – Squarefreeness tests	88
3.17.1	Definition	88
3.17.2	lenstra – Lenstra’s condition	88
3.17.3	trial_division – trial division	88
3.17.4	trivial_test – trivial tests	89
3.17.5	viafactor – via factorization	89
3.17.6	viadecomposition – via partial factorization	89
3.17.7	lenstra_ternary – Lenstra’s condition, ternary version . .	89
3.17.8	trivial_test_ternary – trivial tests, ternary version . . .	90
3.17.9	trial_division_ternary – trial division, ternary version . .	90
3.17.10	viafactor_ternary – via factorization, ternary version . . .	90
4	Classes	91
4.1	algfield – Algebraic Number Field	91
4.1.1	NumberField – number field	91
4.1.1.1	getConj – roots of polynomial	93
4.1.1.2	disc – polynomial discriminant	93
4.1.1.3	integer_ring – integer ring	93

4.1.1.4	field_discriminant – discriminant	93
4.1.1.5	basis – standard basis	93
4.1.1.6	signature – signature	94
4.1.1.7	POLRED – polynomial reduction	94
4.1.1.8	isIntBasis – check integral basis	94
4.1.1.9	isGaloisField – check Galois field	94
4.1.1.10	isFieldElement – check field element	94
4.1.1.11	getCharacteristic – characteristic	95
4.1.1.12	createElement – create an element	95
4.1.2	BasicAlgNumber – Algebraic Number Class by standard basis	96
4.1.2.1	inverse – inverse	98
4.1.2.2	getConj – roots of polynomial	98
4.1.2.3	getApprox – approximate conjugates	98
4.1.2.4	getCharPoly – characteristic polynomial	98
4.1.2.5	getRing – the field	98
4.1.2.6	trace – trace	98
4.1.2.7	norm – norm	99
4.1.2.8	isAlgInteger – check (algebraic) integer	99
4.1.2.9	ch_matrix – obtain MatAlgNumber object	99
4.1.3	MatAlgNumber – Algebraic Number Class by matrix representation	100
4.1.3.1	inverse – inverse	102
4.1.3.2	getRing – the field	102
4.1.3.3	trace – trace	102
4.1.3.4	norm – norm	102
4.1.3.5	ch_basic – obtain BasicAlgNumber object	102
4.1.4	changetype(function) – obtain BasicAlgNumber object	104
4.1.5	disc(function) – discriminant	104
4.1.6	fppoly(function) – polynomial over finite prime field	104
4.1.7	qpoly(function) – polynomial over rational field	104
4.1.8	zpoly(function) – polynomial over integer ring	105
4.2	elliptic – elliptic class object	106
4.2.1	†ECGeneric – generic elliptic curve class	107
4.2.1.1	simple – simplify the curve coefficient	109
4.2.1.2	changeCurve – change the curve by coordinate change	109
4.2.1.3	changePoint – change coordinate of point on the curve	109
4.2.1.4	coordinateY – Y-coordinate from X-coordinate	109
4.2.1.5	whetherOn – Check point is on curve	110
4.2.1.6	add – Point addition on the curve	110
4.2.1.7	sub – Point subtraction on the curve	110
4.2.1.8	mul – Scalar point multiplication on the curve	110
4.2.1.9	divPoly – division polynomial	110
4.2.2	ECCoverQ – elliptic curve over rational field	111

4.2.2.1	point – obtain random point on curve	112
4.2.3	ECoverGF – elliptic curve over finite field	113
4.2.3.1	point – find random point on curve	114
4.2.3.2	naive – Frobenius trace by naive method	114
4.2.3.3	Shanks_Mestre – Frobenius trace by Shanks and Mestre method	114
4.2.3.4	Schoof – Frobenius trace by Schoof’s method	114
4.2.3.5	trace – Frobenius trace	115
4.2.3.6	order – order of group of rational points on the curve	115
4.2.3.7	pointorder – order of point on the curve	115
4.2.3.8	TatePairing – Tate Pairing	116
4.2.3.9	TatePairing_Extend – Tate Pairing with final exponentiation	116
4.2.3.10	WeilPairing – Weil Pairing	116
4.2.3.11	BSGS – point order by Baby-Step and Giant-Step	116
4.2.3.12	DLP_BSGS – solve Discrete Logarithm Prob- lem by Baby-Step and Giant-Step	117
4.2.3.13	structure – structure of group of rational points	117
4.2.3.14	issupersingular – check supersingular curve	117
4.2.4	EC(function)	119
4.3	finitefield – Finite Field	120
4.3.1	†FiniteField – finite field, abstract	121
4.3.2	†FiniteFieldElement – element in finite field, abstract	122
4.3.3	FinitePrimeField – finite prime field	123
4.3.3.1	createElement – create element of finite prime field	124
4.3.3.2	getCharacteristic – get characteristic	124
4.3.3.3	issubring – subring test	124
4.3.3.4	issuperring – superring test	124
4.3.4	FinitePrimeFieldElement – element of finite prime field	125
4.3.4.1	getRing – get ring object	126
4.3.4.2	order – order of multiplicative group	126
4.3.5	ExtendedField – extended field of finite field	127
4.3.5.1	createElement – create element of extended field	128
4.3.5.2	getCharacteristic – get characteristic	128
4.3.5.3	issubring – subring test	128
4.3.5.4	issuperring – superring test	128
4.3.5.5	primitive_element – generator of multiplicative group	128
4.3.6	ExtendedFieldElement – element of finite field	129
4.3.6.1	getRing – get ring object	130
4.3.6.2	inverse – inverse element	130
4.4	group – algorithms for finite groups	131
4.4.1	†Group – group structure	132
4.4.1.1	setOperation – change operation	134

4.4.1.2	†createElement – generate a GroupElement instance	134
4.4.1.3	†identity – identity element	134
4.4.1.4	grouporder – order of the group	134
4.4.2	GroupElement – elements of group structure	136
4.4.2.1	setOperation – change operation	138
4.4.2.2	†getGroup – generate a Group instance	138
4.4.2.3	order – order by factorization method	138
4.4.2.4	t_order – order by baby-step giant-step	138
4.4.3	†GenerateGroup – group structure with generator	140
4.4.4	AbelianGenerate – abelian group structure with generator	141
4.4.4.1	relationLattice – relation between generators	141
4.4.4.2	computeStructure – abelian group structure	141
4.5	imaginary – complex numbers and its functions	142
4.5.1	ComplexField – field of complex numbers	143
4.5.1.1	createElement – create Imaginary object	144
4.5.1.2	getCharacteristic – get characteristic	144
4.5.1.3	issubring – subring test	144
4.5.1.4	issuperring – superring test	144
4.5.2	Complex – a complex number	145
4.5.2.1	getRing – get ring object	146
4.5.2.2	arg – argument of complex	146
4.5.2.3	conjugate – complex conjugate	146
4.5.2.4	copy – copied number	146
4.5.2.5	inverse – complex inverse	146
4.5.3	ExponentialPowerSeries – exponential power series	147
4.5.4	AbsoluteError – absolute error	147
4.5.5	RelativeError – relative error	147
4.5.6	exp(function) – exponential value	147
4.5.7	expi(function) – imaginary exponential value	147
4.5.8	log(function) – logarithm	147
4.5.9	sin(function) – sine function	147
4.5.10	cos(function) – cosine function	147
4.5.11	tan(function) – tangent function	147
4.5.12	sinh(function) – hyperbolic sine function	147
4.5.13	cosh(function) – hyperbolic cosine function	147
4.5.14	tanh(function) – hyperbolic tangent function	147
4.5.15	atanh(function) – hyperbolic arc tangent function	148
4.5.16	sqrt(function) – square root	148
4.6	intresidue – integer residue	149
4.6.1	IntegerResidueClass – integer residue class	150
4.6.1.1	getRing – get ring object	151
4.6.1.2	getResidue – get residue	151
4.6.1.3	getModulus – get modulus	151
4.6.1.4	inverse – inverse element	151

	4.6.1.5	minimumAbsolute – minimum absolute representative	151
	4.6.1.6	minimumNonNegative – smallest non-negative representative	151
4.6.2		IntegerResidueClassRing – ring of integer residue	152
	4.6.2.1	createElement – create IntegerResidueClass object	153
	4.6.2.2	isfield – field test	153
	4.6.2.3	getInstance – get instance of IntegerResidueClassRing	153
4.7		lattice – Lattice	154
	4.7.1	Lattice – lattice	154
	4.7.1.1	createElement – create element	155
	4.7.1.2	bilinearForm – bilinear form	155
	4.7.1.3	isCyclic – Check whether cyclic lattice or not	155
	4.7.1.4	isIdeal – Check whether ideal lattice or not	155
	4.7.2	LatticeElement – element of lattice	156
	4.7.2.1	getLattice – Find lattice belongs to	157
	4.7.3	LLL(function) – LLL reduction	158
4.8		matrix – matrices	159
	4.8.1	Matrix – matrices	160
	4.8.1.1	map – apply function to elements	162
	4.8.1.2	reduce – reduce elements iteratively	162
	4.8.1.3	copy – create a copy	162
	4.8.1.4	set – set compo	162
	4.8.1.5	setRow – set m-th row vector	163
	4.8.1.6	setColumn – set n-th column vector	163
	4.8.1.7	getRow – get i-th row vector	163
	4.8.1.8	getColumn – get j-th column vector	163
	4.8.1.9	swapRow – swap two row vectors	163
	4.8.1.10	swapColumn – swap two column vectors	164
	4.8.1.11	insertRow – insert row vectors	164
	4.8.1.12	insertColumn – insert column vectors	164
	4.8.1.13	extendRow – extend row vectors	164
	4.8.1.14	extendColumn – extend column vectors	164
	4.8.1.15	deleteRow – delete row vector	165
	4.8.1.16	deleteColumn – delete column vector	165
	4.8.1.17	transpose – transpose matrix	165
	4.8.1.18	getBlock – block matrix	165
	4.8.1.19	subMatrix – submatrix	165
	4.8.2	SquareMatrix – square matrices	167
	4.8.2.1	isUpperTriangularMatrix – check upper triangular	168
	4.8.2.2	isLowerTriangularMatrix – check lower triangular	168
	4.8.2.3	isDiagonalMatrix – check diagonal matrix	168
	4.8.2.4	isScalarMatrix – check scalar matrix	168
	4.8.2.5	isSymmetricMatrix – check symmetric matrix	168
	4.8.3	RingMatrix – matrix whose elements belong ring	170

4.8.3.1	getCoefficientRing – get coefficient ring	171
4.8.3.2	toFieldMatrix – set field as coefficient ring	171
4.8.3.3	toSubspace – regard as vector space	171
4.8.3.4	hermiteNormalForm (HNF) – Hermite Normal Form	171
4.8.3.5	exthermiteNormalForm (extHNF) – extended Hermite Normal Form algorithm	171
4.8.3.6	kernelAsModule – kernel as $\mathbb{Z}$ -module	172
4.8.4	RingSquareMatrix – square matrix whose elements belong to ring	173
4.8.4.1	getRing – get matrix ring	174
4.8.4.2	isOrthogonalMatrix – check orthogonal matrix	174
4.8.4.3	isAlternatingMatrix (isAntiSymmetricMatrix, isSkewSymmetricMatrix) – check alternating matrix	174
4.8.4.4	isSingular – check singular matrix	174
4.8.4.5	trace – trace	174
4.8.4.6	determinant – determinant	175
4.8.4.7	cofactor – cofactor	175
4.8.4.8	commutator – commutator	175
4.8.4.9	characteristicMatrix – characteristic matrix	175
4.8.4.10	adjugateMatrix – adjugate matrix	175
4.8.4.11	cofactorMatrix (cofactors) – cofactor matrix	176
4.8.4.12	smithNormalForm (SNF, elementary_divisor) – Smith Normal Form (SNF)	176
4.8.4.13	extsmithNormalForm (extSNF) – Smith Normal Form (SNF)	176
4.8.5	FieldMatrix – matrix whose elements belong to field	178
4.8.5.1	kernel – kernel	179
4.8.5.2	image – image	179
4.8.5.3	rank – rank	179
4.8.5.4	inverseImage – inverse image: base solution of linear system	179
4.8.5.5	solve – solve linear system	179
4.8.5.6	columnEchelonForm – column echelon form	180
4.8.6	FieldSquareMatrix – square matrix whose elements belong to field	181
4.8.6.1	triangulate - triangulate by elementary row operation	182
4.8.6.2	inverse - inverse matrix	182
4.8.6.3	hessenbergForm - Hessenberg form	182
4.8.6.4	LUdecomposition - LU decomposition	182
4.8.7	†MatrixRing – ring of matrices	183
4.8.7.1	unitMatrix - unit matrix	184
4.8.7.2	zeroMatrix - zero matrix	184
4.8.7.3	getInstance(class function) - get cached instance	185
4.8.8	Subspace – subspace of finite dimensional vector space	186

4.8.8.1	issubspace - check subspace of self	187
4.8.8.2	toBasis - select basis	187
4.8.8.3	supplementBasis - to full rank	187
4.8.8.4	sumOfSubspaces - sum as subspace	187
4.8.8.5	intersectionOfSubspaces - intersection as subspace	187
4.8.8.6	fromMatrix(class function) - create subspace . .	189
4.8.9	createMatrix[function] - create an instance	190
4.8.10	identityMatrix(unitMatrix)[function] - unit matrix	190
4.8.11	zeroMatrix[function] - zero matrix	190
4.9	module - module/ideal with HNF	192
4.9.1	Submodule - submodule as matrix representation	193
4.9.1.1	getGenerators - generator of module	194
4.9.1.2	isSubmodule - Check whether submodule of self	194
4.9.1.3	isEqual - Check whether self and other are same module	194
4.9.1.4	isContain - Check whether other is in self	194
4.9.1.5	toHNF - change to HNF	194
4.9.1.6	sumOfSubmodules - sum as submodule	195
4.9.1.7	intersectionOfSubmodules - intersection as sub- module	195
4.9.1.8	represent_element - represent element as linear combination	195
4.9.1.9	linear_combination - compute linear combination	195
4.9.2	fromMatrix(class function) - create submodule	197
4.9.3	Module - module over a number field	198
4.9.3.1	toHNF - change to hermite normal form(HNF) .	200
4.9.3.2	copy - create copy	200
4.9.3.3	intersect - intersection	200
4.9.3.4	issubmodule - Check submodule	200
4.9.3.5	issupermodule - Check supermodule	200
4.9.3.6	represent_element - Represent as linear combi- nation	200
4.9.3.7	change_base_module - Change base	201
4.9.3.8	index - size of module	201
4.9.3.9	smallest_rational - a Z -generator in the rational field	201
4.9.4	Ideal - ideal over a number field	203
4.9.4.1	inverse - inverse	204
4.9.4.2	issubideal - Check subideal	204
4.9.4.3	issuperideal - Check superideal	204
4.9.4.4	gcd - greatest common divisor	204
4.9.4.5	lcm - least common multiplier	204
4.9.4.6	norm - norm	205
4.9.4.7	isIntegral - Check integral	205
4.9.5	Ideal_with_generator - ideal with generator	206
4.9.5.1	copy - create copy	208

4.9.5.2	to_HNFRepresentation - change to ideal with HNF	208
4.9.5.3	twoElementRepresentation - Represent with two element	208
4.9.5.4	smallest_rational - a $\mathbf{Z}$ -generator in the rational field	208
4.9.5.5	inverse - inverse	208
4.9.5.6	norm - norm	209
4.9.5.7	intersect - intersection	209
4.9.5.8	issubideal - Check subideal	209
4.9.5.9	issuperideal - Check superideal	209
4.10	permute - permutation (symmetric) group	211
4.10.1	Permute - element of permutation group	212
4.10.1.1	setKey - change key	214
4.10.1.2	getValue - get "value"	214
4.10.1.3	getGroup - get PermGroup	214
4.10.1.4	numbering - give the index	214
4.10.1.5	order - order of the element	214
4.10.1.6	ToTranspose - represent as transpositions	215
4.10.1.7	ToCyclic - corresponding ExPermute element	215
4.10.1.8	sgn - sign of the permutation	215
4.10.1.9	types - type of cyclic representation	215
4.10.1.10	ToMatrix - permutation matrix	216
4.10.2	ExPermute - element of permutation group as cyclic representation	217
4.10.2.1	setKey - change key	219
4.10.2.2	getValue - get "value"	219
4.10.2.3	getGroup - get PermGroup	219
4.10.2.4	order - order of the element	219
4.10.2.5	ToNormal - represent as normal style	219
4.10.2.6	simplify - use simple value	220
4.10.2.7	sgn - sign of the permutation	220
4.10.3	PermGroup - permutation group	221
4.10.3.1	createElement - create an element from seed	222
4.10.3.2	identity - group identity	222
4.10.3.3	identity_c - group identity as cyclic type	222
4.10.3.4	grouporder - order as group	222
4.10.3.5	randElement - random permute element	222
4.11	rational - integer and rational number	224
4.11.1	Integer - integer	225
4.11.1.1	getRing - get ring object	226
4.11.1.2	actAdditive - addition of binary addition chain	226
4.11.1.3	actMultiplicative - multiplication of binary addition chain	226
4.11.2	IntegerRing - integer ring	227
4.11.2.1	createElement - create Integer object	228

4.11.2.2	gcd – greatest common divisor	228
4.11.2.3	extgcd – extended GCD	228
4.11.2.4	lcm – lowest common multiplier	228
4.11.2.5	getQuotientField – get rational field object	228
4.11.2.6	issubring – subring test	228
4.11.2.7	issuperring – superring test	229
4.11.3	Rational – rational number	230
4.11.3.1	getRing – get ring object	231
4.11.3.2	decimalString – represent decimal	231
4.11.3.3	expand – continued-fraction representation	231
4.11.4	RationalField – the rational field	232
4.11.4.1	createElement – create Rational object	233
4.11.4.2	classNumber – get class number	233
4.11.4.3	getQuotientField – get rational field object	233
4.11.4.4	issubring – subring test	233
4.11.4.5	issuperring – superring test	233
4.12	real – real numbers and its functions	234
4.12.1	RealField – field of real numbers	236
4.12.1.1	getCharacteristic – get characteristic	237
4.12.1.2	issubring – subring test	237
4.12.1.3	issuperring – superring test	237
4.12.2	Real – a Real number	238
4.12.2.1	getRing – get ring object	239
4.12.3	Constant – real number with error correction	240
4.12.4	ExponentialPowerSeries – exponential power series	240
4.12.5	AbsoluteError – absolute error	240
4.12.6	RelativeError – relative error	240
4.12.7	exp(function) – exponential value	240
4.12.8	sqrt(function) – square root	240
4.12.9	log(function) – logarithm	240
4.12.10	log1piter(function) – iterator of $\log(1+x)$	240
4.12.11	piGaussLegendre(function) – pi by Gauss-Legendre	240
4.12.12	eContinuedFraction(function) – Napier’s Constant by continued fraction expansion	240
4.12.13	floor(function) – floor the number	241
4.12.14	ceil(function) – ceil the number	241
4.12.15	trunc(function) – round-off the number	241
4.12.16	sin(function) – sine function	241
4.12.17	cos(function) – cosine function	241
4.12.18	tan(function) – tangent function	241
4.12.19	sinh(function) – hyperbolic sine function	241
4.12.20	cosh(function) – hyperbolic cosine function	241
4.12.21	tanh(function) – hyperbolic tangent function	241
4.12.22	asin(function) – arc sine function	242
4.12.23	acos(function) – arc cosine function	242
4.12.24	atan(function) – arc tangent function	242

4.12.25	atan2(function) – arc tangent function	242
4.12.26	hypot(function) – Euclidean distance function	242
4.12.27	pow(function) – power function	242
4.12.28	degrees(function) – convert angle to degree	242
4.12.29	radians(function) – convert angle to radian	242
4.12.30	fabs(function) – absolute value	242
4.12.31	fmod(function) – modulo function over real	242
4.12.32	frexp(function) – expression with base and binary exponent	243
4.12.33	ldexp(function) – construct number from base and binary exponent	243
4.12.34	EulerTransform(function) – iterator yields terms of Euler transform	243
4.13	ring – for ring object	244
4.13.1	†Ring – abstract ring	245
4.13.1.1	createElement – create an element	246
4.13.1.2	getCharacteristic – characteristic as ring	246
4.13.1.3	issubring – check subring	246
4.13.1.4	issuperring – check superring	246
4.13.1.5	getCommonSuperring – get common ring	247
4.13.2	†CommutativeRing – abstract commutative ring	248
4.13.2.1	getQuotientField – create quotient field	249
4.13.2.2	isdomain – check domain	249
4.13.2.3	isnoetherian – check Noetherian domain	249
4.13.2.4	isufd – check UFD	249
4.13.2.5	ispid – check PID	249
4.13.2.6	iseuclidean – check Euclidean domain	250
4.13.2.7	isfield – check field	250
4.13.2.8	registerModuleAction – register action as ring	250
4.13.2.9	hasaction – check if the action has	250
4.13.2.10	getaction – get the registered action	250
4.13.3	†Field – abstract field	252
4.13.3.1	gcd – gcd	253
4.13.4	†QuotientField – abstract quotient field	254
4.13.5	†RingElement – abstract element of ring	255
4.13.5.1	getRing – getRing	256
4.13.6	†CommutativeRingElement – abstract element of commu- tative ring	257
4.13.6.1	mul_module_action – apply a module action	258
4.13.6.2	exact_division – division exactly	258
4.13.7	†FieldElement – abstract element of field	259
4.13.8	†QuotientFieldElement – abstract element of quotient field	260
4.13.9	†Ideal – abstract ideal	261
4.13.9.1	issubset – check subset	262
4.13.9.2	issuperset – check superset	262
4.13.9.3	reduce – reduction with the ideal	262
4.13.10	†ResidueClassRing – abstract residue class ring	263

4.13.11	†ResidueClass – abstract an element of residue class ring	264
4.13.12	†CommutativeRingProperties – properties for Commu- tativeRingProperties	265
4.13.12.1	isfield – check field	266
4.13.12.2	setIsfield – set field	266
4.13.12.3	iseuclidean – check euclidean	266
4.13.12.4	setIseuclidean – set euclidean	266
4.13.12.5	ispid – check PID	267
4.13.12.6	setIspid – set PID	267
4.13.12.7	isufd – check UFD	267
4.13.12.8	setIsufd – set UFD	267
4.13.12.9	isnoetherian – check Noetherian	268
4.13.12.10	setIsnoetherian – set Noetherian	268
4.13.12.11	isdomain – check domain	268
4.13.12.12	setIsdomain – set domain	268
4.13.13	getRingInstance(function)	270
4.13.14	getRing(function)	270
4.13.15	inverse(function)	270
4.13.16	exact_division(function)	270
4.14	vector – vector object and arithmetic	272
4.14.1	Vector – vector class	273
4.14.1.1	copy – copy itself	275
4.14.1.2	set – set other compo	275
4.14.1.3	indexOfNoneZero – first non-zero coordinate	275
4.14.1.4	toMatrix – convert to Matrix object	275
4.14.2	innerProduct(function) – inner product	277
4.15	factor.ecm – ECM factorization	278
4.15.1	ecm – elliptic curve method	278
4.16	factor.find – find a factor	279
4.16.1	trialDivision – trial division	279
4.16.2	pmom – $p - 1$ method	279
4.16.3	rhomethod – ρ method	279
4.17	factor.methods – factoring methods	281
4.17.1	factor – easiest way to factor	281
4.17.2	ecm – elliptic curve method	281
4.17.3	mpqs – multi-polynomial quadratic sieve method	282
4.17.4	pmom – $p - 1$ method	282
4.17.5	rhomethod – ρ method	282
4.17.6	trialDivision – trial division	282
4.18	factor.misc – miscellaneous functions related factoring	284
4.18.1	allDivisors – all divisors	284
4.18.2	primeDivisors – prime divisors	284
4.18.3	primePowerTest – prime power test	284
4.18.4	squarePart – square part	285
4.18.5	countDivisors – the number of positive divisors	285
4.18.6	sumDivisors – the sum of positive divisors	285

4.18.7	FactoredInteger – integer with its factorization	286
4.18.7.1	is_divisible_by	287
4.18.7.2	exact_division	287
4.18.7.3	divisors	287
4.18.7.4	proper_divisors	287
4.18.7.5	prime_divisors	287
4.18.7.6	square_part	287
4.18.7.7	squarefree_part	288
4.18.7.8	copy	288
4.19	factor.mpqqs – MPQS	288
4.19.1	mpqsfind	288
4.19.2	mpqs	288
4.20	factor.util – utilities for factorization	289
4.20.1	FactoringInteger – keeping track of factorization	289
4.20.1.1	getNextTarget – next target	290
4.20.1.2	getResult – result of factorization	290
4.20.1.3	register – register a new factor	290
4.20.1.4	sortFactors – sort factors	290
4.20.2	FactoringMethod – method of factorization	292
4.20.2.1	factor – do factorization	293
4.20.2.2	†continue_factor – continue factorization	293
4.20.2.3	†find – find a factor	293
4.20.2.4	†generate – generate prime factors	293
4.21	poly.array – for FFT algorithm	295
4.21.1	check_zero_poly – checks all zero coefficients	295
4.21.2	arrange_coefficients – remove needless zero	295
4.21.3	ArrayPoly – polynomial with integer coefficients	296
4.21.3.1	coefficients_to_dict – return coefficients as dict	297
4.21.3.2	__repr__ – return coefficients repr as dict	297
4.21.3.3	__str__ – return coefficients str as dict	297
4.21.4	ArrayPolyMod – polynomial with coefficients modulo positive integer	297
4.21.4.1	__repr__ – return mod and coefficients repr as dict	299
4.21.4.2	__str__ – return mod and coefficients str as dict	299
4.21.5	min_abs_mod – minimum absolute modulo	299
4.21.6	bit_reverse – the result reversed bit of n	299
4.21.7	ceillog – ceiling of log(n, 2)	299
4.21.8	perfect_shuffle – arrange list by divide-and-conquer	299
4.21.9	FFT – Fast Fourier Transform	300
4.21.10	reverse_FFT – Reverse Fast Fourier Transform	300
4.22	poly.factor – polynomial factorization	301
4.22.1	brute_force_search – search factorization by brute force	301
4.22.2	divisibility_test – divisibility test	301
4.22.3	minimum_absolute_injection – send coefficients to minimum absolute representation	301

4.22.4	<code>padic_factorization</code> – p-adic factorization	301
4.22.5	<code>upper_bound_of_coefficient</code> – Landau-Mignotte bound of coefficients	302
4.22.6	<code>zassenhaus</code> – squarefree integer polynomial factorization by Zassenhaus method	302
4.22.7	<code>integerpolynomialfactorization</code> – Integer polynomial factorization	302
4.23	<code>poly.formalsum</code> – formal sum	303
4.23.1	<code>FormalSumContainerInterface</code> – interface class	304
4.23.1.1	<code>construct_with_default</code> – copy-constructing	305
4.23.1.2	<code>iterterms</code> – iterator of terms	305
4.23.1.3	<code>itercoefficients</code> – iterator of coefficients	305
4.23.1.4	<code>iterbases</code> – iterator of bases	305
4.23.1.5	<code>terms</code> – list of terms	305
4.23.1.6	<code>coefficients</code> – list of coefficients	305
4.23.1.7	<code>bases</code> – list of bases	306
4.23.1.8	<code>terms_map</code> – list of terms	306
4.23.1.9	<code>coefficients_map</code> – list of coefficients	306
4.23.1.10	<code>bases_map</code> – list of bases	306
4.23.2	<code>DictFormalSum</code> – formal sum implemented with dictionary	307
4.23.3	<code>ListFormalSum</code> – formal sum implemented with list	307
4.24	<code>poly.groebner</code> – Gröbner Basis	308
4.24.1	<code>buchberger</code> – naïve algorithm for obtaining Gröbner basis	308
4.24.2	<code>normal_strategy</code> – normal algorithm for obtaining Gröbner basis	308
4.24.3	<code>reduce_groebner</code> – reduce Gröbner basis	308
4.24.4	<code>s_polynomial</code> – S-polynomial	309
4.25	<code>poly.hensel</code> – Hensel lift	309
4.25.1	<code>HenselLiftPair</code> – Hensel lift for a pair	311
4.25.1.1	<code>lift</code> – lift one step	312
4.25.1.2	<code>lift_factors</code> – lift <code>a1</code> and <code>a2</code>	312
4.25.1.3	<code>lift_ladder</code> – lift <code>u1</code> and <code>u2</code>	312
4.25.2	<code>HenselLiftMulti</code> – Hensel lift for multiple polynomials	312
4.25.2.1	<code>lift</code> – lift one step	314
4.25.2.2	<code>lift_factors</code> – lift factors	314
4.25.2.3	<code>lift_ladder</code> – lift <code>u1</code> and <code>u2</code>	314
4.25.3	<code>HenselLiftSimultaneously</code>	315
4.25.3.1	<code>lift</code> – lift one step	316
4.25.3.2	<code>first_lift</code> – the first step	316
4.25.3.3	<code>general_lift</code> – next step	316
4.25.4	<code>lift_upto</code> – main function	316
4.26	<code>poly.multiutil</code> – utilities for multivariate polynomials	317
4.26.1	<code>RingPolynomial</code>	318
4.26.1.1	<code>getRing</code>	319
4.26.1.2	<code>getCoefficientRing</code>	319
4.26.1.3	<code>leading_variable</code>	319

4.26.1.4	nest	319
4.26.1.5	unnest	319
4.26.2	DomainPolynomial	319
4.26.2.1	pseudo_divmod	321
4.26.2.2	pseudo_floordiv	321
4.26.2.3	pseudo_mod	321
4.26.2.4	exact_division	321
4.26.3	UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial	322
4.26.3.1	gcd	323
4.26.3.2	resultant	323
4.26.4	polynomial – factory function for various polynomials	323
4.26.5	prepare_indeterminates – simultaneous declarations of indeterminates	323
4.27	poly.multivar – multivariate polynomial	325
4.27.1	PolynomialInterface – base class for all multivariate polynomials	326
4.27.2	BasicPolynomial – basic implementation of polynomial	326
4.27.3	TermIndices – Indices of terms of multivariate polynomials	326
4.27.3.1	pop	327
4.27.3.2	gcd	327
4.27.3.3	lcm	327
4.28	poly.ratfunc – rational function	328
4.28.1	RationalFunction – rational function class	329
4.28.1.1	getRing – get rational function field	330
4.29	poly.ring – polynomial rings	331
4.29.1	PolynomialRing – ring of polynomials	332
4.29.1.1	getInstance – classmethod	333
4.29.1.2	getCoefficientRing	333
4.29.1.3	getQuotientField	333
4.29.1.4	issubring	333
4.29.1.5	issuperring	333
4.29.1.6	getCharacteristic	333
4.29.1.7	createElement	333
4.29.1.8	gcd	333
4.29.1.9	isdomain	334
4.29.1.10	iseuclidean	334
4.29.1.11	isnoetherian	334
4.29.1.12	ispid	334
4.29.1.13	isufd	334
4.29.2	RationalFunctionField – field of rational functions	334
4.29.2.1	getInstance – classmethod	335
4.29.2.2	createElement	335
4.29.2.3	getQuotientField	335
4.29.2.4	issubring	335
4.29.2.5	issuperring	335
4.29.2.6	unnest	335

4.29.2.7	gcd	335
4.29.2.8	isdomain	336
4.29.2.9	iseuclidean	336
4.29.2.10	isnoetherian	336
4.29.2.11	ispid	336
4.29.2.12	isufd	336
4.29.3	PolynomialIdeal – ideal of polynomial ring	336
4.29.3.1	reduce	337
4.29.3.2	issubset	337
4.29.3.3	issuperset	337
4.30	poly.termorder – term orders	338
4.30.1	TermOrderInterface – interface of term order	339
4.30.1.1	cmp	340
4.30.1.2	format	340
4.30.1.3	leading_coefficient	340
4.30.1.4	leading_term	340
4.30.2	UnivarTermOrder – term order for univariate polynomials	340
4.30.2.1	format	342
4.30.2.2	degree	342
4.30.2.3	tail_degree	342
4.30.3	MultivarTermOrder – term order for multivariate polynomials	342
4.30.3.1	format	343
4.30.4	weight_order – weight order	343
4.31	poly.uniutil – univariate utilities	344
4.31.1	RingPolynomial – polynomial over commutative ring	345
4.31.1.1	getRing	346
4.31.1.2	getCoefficientRing	346
4.31.1.3	shift_degree_to	346
4.31.1.4	split_at	346
4.31.2	DomainPolynomial – polynomial over domain	346
4.31.2.1	pseudo_divmod	348
4.31.2.2	pseudo_floordiv	348
4.31.2.3	pseudo_mod	348
4.31.2.4	exact_division	348
4.31.2.5	scalar_exact_division	348
4.31.2.6	discriminant	349
4.31.2.7	to_field_polynomial	349
4.31.3	UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial – polynomial over UFD	349
4.31.3.1	content	349
4.31.3.2	primitive_part	349
4.31.3.3	subresultant_gcd	350
4.31.3.4	subresultant_extgcd	350
4.31.3.5	resultant	350
4.31.4	IntegerPolynomial – polynomial over ring of rational integers	350

4.31.4.1	normalize	351
4.31.4.2	reduce	351
4.31.5	FieldPolynomial – polynomial over field	351
4.31.5.1	content	353
4.31.5.2	primitive_part	353
4.31.5.3	mod	353
4.31.5.4	scalar_exact_division	353
4.31.5.5	gcd	353
4.31.5.6	extgcd	353
4.31.6	FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial – polynomial over finite prime field	354
4.31.6.1	mod_pow – powering with modulus	355
4.31.6.2	pthroot	355
4.31.6.3	squarefree_decomposition	355
4.31.6.4	distinct_degree_decomposition	355
4.31.6.5	split_same_degrees	356
4.31.6.6	factor	356
4.31.6.7	isirreducible	356
4.31.7	polynomial – factory function for various polynomials	356
4.32	poly.univar – univariate polynomial	357
4.32.1	PolynomialInterface – base class for all univariate polynomials	358
4.32.1.1	differentiate – formal differentiation	359
4.32.1.2	downshift_degree – decreased degree polynomial	359
4.32.1.3	upshift_degree – increased degree polynomial	359
4.32.1.4	ring_mul – multiplication in the ring	359
4.32.1.5	scalar_mul – multiplication with a scalar	359
4.32.1.6	term_mul – multiplication with a term	359
4.32.1.7	square – multiplication with itself	360
4.32.2	BasicPolynomial – basic implementation of polynomial	360
4.32.3	SortedPolynomial – polynomial keeping terms sorted	360
4.32.3.1	degree – degree	361
4.32.3.2	leading_coefficient – the leading coefficient	361
4.32.3.3	leading_term – the leading term	361
4.32.3.4	ring_mul_karatsuba – the leading term	361

Chapter 1

Overview

1.1 Introduction

NZMATH[8] is a number theory oriented calculation system mainly developed by the Nakamura laboratory at Tokyo Metropolitan University. NZMATH system provides you mathematical, especially number-theoretic computational power. It is freely available and distributed under the BSD license. The most distinctive feature of NZMATH is that it is written entirely using a scripting language called Python. Namely NZMATH is a **Python Calculator on Number Theory** for algorithmic number theorists.

If you want to learn how to start using NZMATH, see Installation (section 1.1.3) and Tutorial (section 1.1.4).

1.1.1 Philosophy – Advantages over Other Systems

In this section, we discuss philosophy of NZMATH, that is, the advantages of NZMATH compared to other similar systems.

1.1.1.1 Open Source Software

Many computational algebra systems, such as Maple[4], Mathematica[5], and Magma[3] are fare-paying systems. These non-free systems are not distributed with source codes. Then, users cannot modify such systems easily. It narrows these system's potentials for users not to take part in developing them. NZMATH, on the other hand, is an open-source software and the source codes are openly available. Furthermore, NZMATH is distributed under the BSD license. BSD license claims as-is and redistribution or commercial use are permitted provided that these packages retain the copyright notice. NZMATH users can develop it just as they like.

1.1.1.2 Speed of Development

We took over developing of SIMATH[10], which was developed under the leadership of Prof. Zimmer at Saarlandes University in Germany. However, it costs a lot of time and efforts to develop these system. Almost all systems including SIMATH are implemented in C or C++ for execution speed, but we have to take the time to work memory management, construction of an interactive interpreter, preparation for multiple precision package and so on. In this regard, we chose Python which is a modern programming language. Python provides automatic memory management, a sophisticated interpreter and many useful packages. We can concentrate on development of mathematical matters by using Python.

1.1.1.3 Bridging the Gap between Users And Developers

KANT/KASH[2] and PARI/GP[9] are similar systems to NZMATH. But programming languages for modifying these systems are different between users and developers. We think the gap makes evolution speed of these systems slow. On the other hand, NZMATH has been developed with Python for bridging this gap. Python grammar is easy to understand and users can read easily codes written by Python. And NZMATH, which is one of Python libraries, works on very wide platform including UNIX/Linux, Macintosh, Windows, and so forth. Users can modify the programs and feedback to developers with a light heart. So developers can absorb their thinking. Then NZMATH will progress to more flexible user-friendly system.

1.1.1.4 Link with Other Softwares

NZMATH distributed as a Python library enables us to link other Python packages with it. For example, NZMATH can be used with IPython[1], which is a comfortable interactive interpreter. And it can be linked with matplotlib[6], which is a powerful graphic software. Also mpmath[7], which is a module for floating-point operation, can improve efficiency of NZMATH. In fact, the module **ecpp** improves performance with mpmath. There are many softwares implemented in Python. Many of these packages are freely available. Users can use NZMATH with these packages and create an unthinkable powerful system.

1.1.2 Information

NZMATH has more than 25 modules. These modules cover a lot of territory including elementary number theoretic methods, combinatorial theoretic methods, solving equations, primality, factorization, multiplicative number theoretic functions, matrix, vector, polynomial, rational field, finite field, elliptic curve, and so on. NZMATH manual for users (this file) is at

https://nzmath.sourceforge.io/nzmth_doc.pdf

If you are interested in NZMATH, please visit the official website below to obtain more information about it.

<https://nzmath.sourceforge.io/>

Note that NZMATH can be used even if users do not have any experience of writing programs in Python.

1.1.3 Installation

In this section, we explain how to install NZMATH.

If you know well about pip installation, then command line input

```
% python -m pip install nzmath
```

solves everything, however we shall explain a little more.

Detailed “tutorial on installing packages”

<https://packaging.python.org/en/latest/tutorials/installing-packages/>

will help you to install NZMATH on your machine.

Usually, you must have appropriate write permission to your machine.

1.1.3.1 Installation of Python

NZMATH requires Python version 3.8 or later. If you do not have Python installed on your machine, please install it. The Python language is a very high level language. It is downloadable from the website

<https://www.python.org/>

There are also some documents there.

Ensure you can run Python from the command line:

```
% python --version
```

(We use % for a command line prompt on UNIX/macOS. On Windows, it may be C:\> or something. Sometimes, you may need to be a privileged user and the prompt may change to # or so on, but we don't care.)

1.1.3.2 Note about Python 2

NZMATH is ready for Python 3 now, and will not support for Python 2. For Python 2, you can install a former version NZMATH-1.2.0 for example.

1.1.3.3 Install NZMATH from PyPI

Ensure you can run `pip` from the command line:

```
% python -m pip --version
```

Then, you can use `pip` installation from command line.

Ensure `pip` itself, `setuptools` and `wheel` are up to date:

```
% python -m pip install -U pip setuptools wheel
```

Finally, you can now install NZMATH from PyPI by

```
% python -m pip install -U nzmeth
```

The easiest way to get the newest NZMATH!

1.1.3.4 Install NZMATH from Local Archives

If you cannot install NZMATH directly from PyPI by some reason , you may install it from local archives. For that, you need to obtain source distribution (sdist) and/or built distribution (wheel)

```
nzmeth-x.y.z.tar.gz  
nzmeth-x.y.z-py3-none-any.whl
```

in advance, where x, y, z are non-negative integers meaning version numbers of NZMATH.

You can get them at SourceForge:

<https://sourceforge.net/projects/nzmeth/files/nzmeth/>

You can also find them at PyPI:

<https://pypi.org/project/nzmeth/>

Assume that `nzmeth-x.y.z.tar.gz` and `nzmeth-x.y.z-py3-none-any.whl` are obtained and put in a local directory say `/tmp/dist/` for example. Then, by any of the three methods below, you can install NZMATH-x.y.z:

From the archive directory,

```
% python -m pip install -U --no-index -f /tmp/dist/ nzmeth
```

or from sdist archive,

```
% python -m pip install -U /tmp/dist/nzmeth-x.y.z.tar.gz
```

or from wheel archive,

```
% python -m pip install -U /tmp/dist/nzmeth-x.y.z-py3-none-any.whl
```

1.1.4 Tutorial

In this section, we describe how to use NZMATH.

1.1.4.1 Sample Session

Start your Python interpreter. That is, open your command interpreter such as Terminal for MacOS or bash/csh for linux, type the strings “python” and press the key Enter.

Examples

```
% python
Python 2.6.1 (r261:67515, Jan 14 2009, 10:59:13)
[GCC 4.1.2 20071124 (Red Hat 4.1.2-42)] on linux2
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
>>>
```

For windows users, it normally means opening IDLE (Python GUI), which is a Python software.

Examples

```
Python 2.6.1 (r261:67517, Dec 4 2008, 16:51:00) [MSC v.1500 32 bit (Intel)] on win32
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
```

```
*****
Personal firewall software may warn about the connection IDLE
makes to its subprocess using this computer's internal loopback
interface. This connection is not visible on any external
interface and no data is sent to or received from the Internet.
*****
```

```
IDLE 2.6.1
>>>
```

Here, '>>>' is a Python prompt, which means that the system waits you to input commands.

Then, type:

Examples

```
>>> from nzmath import *
>>>
```

This command enables you to use all NZMATH features. If you use only a specific module (the term “module” is explained later), for example, prime, type as the following:

Examples

```
>>> from nzmeth import prime
>>>
```

You are ready to use NZMATH. For example, type the string “prime.nextPrime(1000)”, then you obtain ‘1009’ as the smallest prime among numbers greater than 1000.

Examples

```
>>> prime.nextPrime(1000)
1009
>>>
```

“prime” is a name of a module, which is a NZMATH file including Python codes. “nextPrime” is a name of a function, which outputs values after the system executes some processes for inputs. NZMATH has various functions for mathematical or algorithmic computations. See [3 Functions](#).

Also, we can create some mathematical objects. For example, you may use the module “matrix”. If you want to define the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$$

and compute the square, then type as the following:

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(2, 2, [1, 2]+[5, 6])
>>> print(A)
1 2
5 6
>>> print(A ** 2)
11 14
35 46
>>>
```

“Matrix” is a name of a class, which is a template of mathematical objects. See [4 Classes](#) for using NZMATH classes.

The function “print” enables us to represent outputs with good-looking forms. The data structure such as “[a, b, c, ...]” is called list. Also, we use various Python data structures like tuple “(a, b, c, ...)”, dictionary “{ $x_1 : y_1, x_2 : y_2, x_3 : y_3, \dots$ }” etc. Note that we do not explain Python’s syntax in detail because it is not absolutely necessary to use NZMATH. However, we recommend that you learn Python for developing your potential. Python grammar are easy to study. For information on how to use Python, see <http://docs.python.org> or many other documents about Python.

1.1.5 Note on the Document

† Some beginnings of lines or blocks such as sections or sentences may be marked †. This means these lines or blocks is for advanced users. For example, the class *FiniteFieldElement* (See **FinitePrimeFieldElement**) is one of abstract classes in NZMATH, which can be inherited to new classes similar to the finite field.

[...] For example, we may sometimes write as *function(a,b[,c,d/])*. It means the argument “c, d” or only “d” can be discarded. Such functions use “default argument values”, which is one of the feature of Python.

(See <http://docs.python.org/tutorial/controlflow.html#default-argument-values>)

Warning: Python also have the feature “keyword arguments”. We have tried to keep the feature in NZMATH too. However, some functions cannot be used with this feature because these functions are written expecting that arguments are given in order.

Chapter 2

Basic Utilities

2.1 config – setting features

All constants in the module can be set in user's config file. See the [User Settings](#) section for more detailed description.

2.1.1 Default Settings

2.1.1.1 Dependencies

Some third party / platform dependent modules are possibly used, and they are configurable.

HAVE_MPMATH `mpmath` is a package providing multiprecision math. See its [project page](#). This package is used in **ecpp** module.

HAVE_SQLITE3 `sqlite3` is the default database module for `Python` , but it need to be enabled at the build time.

HAVE_NET Some functions connect to the Net. When your machine is not connected to the network, if you set this false, processing may become rarely high-speed.

2.1.1.2 Plug-ins

PLUGIN_MATH `Python` standard float/complex types and [math](#)/[cmath](#) modules only provide fixed precision (double precision), but sometimes multi-precision floating point is needed.

2.1.1.3 Assumptions

Some conjectures are useful for assuring the validity of a faster algorithm.

All assumptions are default to `False`, but you can set them `True` if you believe them.

GRH Generalized Riemann Hypothesis. For example, primality test is $O((\log n)^2)$ if GRH is true while $O((\log n)^6)$ or something without it.

2.1.1.4 Files

DATADIR The directory where `NZMATH` (static) data files are stored. The default will be `os.path.join(sys.prefix, 'share', 'nzmth')` or `os.path.join(sys.prefix, 'Data', 'nzmth')` on Windows.

2.1.2 Automatic Configuration

The items above can be set automatically by testing the environment.

2.1.2.1 Checks

Here are check functions.

The constants accompanying the check functions which enable the check if it is `True`, can be overridden in user settings.

Both check functions and constants are not exposed.

check_mpmath() Check whether `mpmath` is available or not.
constant: `CHECK_MPMATH`

check_sqlite3() Check if `sqlite3` is importable or not. `pysqlite2` may be a substitution.
constant: `CHECK_SQLITE3`

check_net() Check the net connection by HTTP call.
constant: `CHECK_NET`

check_plugin_math() Check which math plug-in is available.
constant: `CHECK_PLUGIN_MATH`

default_datadir() Return default value for `DATADIR`.

This function selects the value from various candidates. If this function is called with `DATADIR` set, the value of (previously-defined) `DATADIR` is the first candidate to be returned. Other possibilities are, `sys.prefix + 'Data/nzmth'` on Windows, or `sys.prefix + 'share/nzmth'` on other platforms.

Be careful that all the above paths do not exist, the function returns `None`.
constant: `CHECK_DATADIR`

2.1.3 User Settings

The module tries to load the user's config file named *nzmathconf.py*. The search path is the following:

1. The directory which is specified by an environment variable `NZMATHCONFDIR`.
2. If the platform is Windows, then
 - (a) If an environment variable `APPDATA` is set, `APPDATA/nzmath`.
 - (b) If, alternatively, an environment variable `USERPROFILE` is set, `USERPROFILE/Application Data/nzmath`.
3. On other platforms, if an environment variable `HOME` is set, `HOME/.nzmath.d`.

nzmathconf.py is a `Python` script. Users can set the constants like `HAVE_MPMATH`, which will override the default settings. These constants, except assumption ones, are automatically set, unless constants accompanying the check functions are false (see the [Automatic Configuration](#) section above).

2.2 bigrandom – random numbers

Historical Note The module was written for replacement of the `Python` standard module `random`, because in the era of `Python 2.2` (prehistorical period of `NZMATH`) the random module raises `OverflowError` for long integer arguments for the `randrange` function, which is the only function having a use case in `NZMATH`.

After the creation of `Python 2.3`, it was theoretically possible to use `random.randrange`, since it started to accept long integer as its argument. Use of it was, however, not considered, since there had been the `bigrandom` module. It was lucky for us. In fall of 2006, we found a bug in `random.randrange` and reported it (see issue tracker); the `random.randrange` accepts long integers but returns unreliable result for truly big integers. The bug was fixed for `Python 2.5.1`. You can, therefore, use `random.randrange` instead of `bigrandom.randrange` for `Python 2.5.1` or higher.

2.2.1 random – random number generator

`random()` → *float*

Return a random floating point number in the interval $[0, 1)$.

This function is an alias to `random.random` in the `Python` standard library.

2.2.2 randrange – random integer generator

```
randrange(start: integer, stop: integer=None, step: integer=1 )  
→ integer
```

Return a random integer in the range.

This function is an alias to `random.randrange` in the Python standard library.

2.3 bigrange – range-like generator functions

2.3.1 count – count up

```
count(n: integer=0 ) → iterator
```

Count up infinitely from *n* (default to 0). See [itertools.count](#).

n must be int or rational.Integer.

2.3.2 arithmetic_progression – arithmetic progression iterator

```
arithmetic_progression(init: integer, difference: integer )  
→ iterator
```

Return an iterator which generates an arithmetic progression starting from *init* and *difference* step.

2.3.3 geometric_progression – geometric progression iterator

```
geometric_progression(init: integer, ratio: integer )  
→ iterator
```

Return an iterator which generates a geometric progression starting from *init* and multiplying *ratio*.

2.3.4 multirange – multiple range iterator

```
multirange(triples: list of range triples ) → iterator
```

Return an iterator over Cartesian product of elements of ranges.

Be cautious that using `multirange` usually means you are trying to do brute force looping.

The range triples may be doubles (`start`, `stop`) or single (`stop`,), but they have to be always tuples.

Examples

```
>>> bigrange.multirange([(1, 10, 3), (1, 10, 4)])
<generator object at 0x18f968>
>>> list(_)
[(1, 1), (1, 5), (1, 9), (4, 1), (4, 5), (4, 9), (7, 1),
 (7, 5), (7, 9)]
```

2.3.5 multirange_restrictions – multiple range iterator with restrictions

multirange_restrictions(triples: *list of range triples*, **kws: *keyword arguments*)
→ *iterator*

multirange_restrictions is an iterator similar to the **multirange** but putting restrictions on each ranges.

Restrictions are specified by keyword arguments: **ascending**, **descending**, **strictly_ascending** and **strictly_descending**.

A restriction **ascending**, for example, is a sequence that specifies the indices where the number emitted by the range should be greater than or equal to the number at the previous index. Other restrictions **descending**, **strictly_ascending** and **strictly_descending** are similar. Compare the examples below and of **multirange**.

Examples

```
>>> bigrange.multirange_restrictions([(1, 10, 3), (1, 10, 4)], ascending=(1,))
<generator object at 0x18f978>
>>> list(_)
[(1, 1), (1, 5), (1, 9), (4, 5), (4, 9), (7, 9)]
```

2.4 compatibility – Keep compatibility between Python versions

This module should be simply imported:

```
import nzmth.compatibility
```

then it will do its tasks.

2.4.1 set, frozenset

The module provides `set` for Python 2.3. Python ≥ 2.4 have `set` in built-in namespace, while Python 2.3 has `sets` module and `sets.Set`. The `set` the module provides for Python 2.3 is the `sets.Set`. Similarly, `sets.ImmutableSet` would be assigned to `frozenset`. Be careful that the compatibility is not perfect. Note also that `NZMATH`'s recommendation is Python 2.5 or higher in 2.x series.

2.4.2 card(virtualset)

Return cardinality of the virtualset.

The built-in `len()` raises `OverflowError` when the result is greater than `sys.maxint`.

It is not clear this restriction will go away in the future. The function `card()` ought to be used instead of `len()` for obtaining cardinality of sets or set-like objects in `nzmth`.

Chapter 3

Functions

3.1 algorithm – basic number theoretic algorithms

3.1.1 digital_method – univariate polynomial evaluation

```
digital_method(coefficients: list, val: object, add: function, mul:  
function, act: function, power: function, zero: object, one: object )  
→ object
```

Evaluate a univariate polynomial corresponding to `coefficients` at `val`.

If the polynomial corresponding to `coefficients` is of R -coefficients for some ring R , then `val` should be in an R -algebra D .

`coefficients` should be a **descending ordered** list of tuples (d, c) , where d is an integer which expresses the degree and c is an element of R which expresses the coefficient. All operations 'add', 'mul', 'act', 'power', 'zero', 'one' should be explicitly given, where:

'add' means addition ($D \times D \rightarrow D$), 'mul' multiplication ($D \times D \rightarrow D$), 'act' action of R ($R \times D \rightarrow D$), 'power' powering ($D \times \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow D$), 'zero' the additive unit (an constant) in D and 'one', the multiplicative unit (an constant) in D .

3.1.2 digital_method_func – function of univariate polynomial evaluation

```
digital_method_func(add: function, mul: function, act: function,  
power: function, zero: object, one: object )  
→ function
```

Return a function which evaluates polynomial corresponding to 'coefficients' at 'val' from an iterator 'coefficients' and an object 'val'.

All operations 'add', 'mul', 'act', 'power', 'zero', 'one' should be inputted in

a manner similar to **digital_method**.

3.1.3 rl_binary_powering – right-left powering

```
rl_binary_powering(element: object, index: integer, mul: function,  
square: function=None, one: object=None, )  
→ object
```

Return **element** to the **index** power by using right-left binary method.

index should be a non-negative integer. If **square** is None, **square** is defined by using **mul**.

3.1.4 lr_binary_powering – left-right powering

```
lr_binary_powering(element: object, index: integer, mul: function,  
square: function=None, one: object=None, )  
→ object
```

Return **element** to the **index** power by using left-right binary method.

index should be a non-negative integer. If **square** is None, **square** is defined by using **mul**.

3.1.5 window_powering – window powering

```
window_powering(element: object, index: integer, mul: function,  
square: function=None, one: object=None, )  
→ object
```

Return **element** to the **index** power by using small-window method.

The window size is selected by average analytic optimization.

index should be a non-negative integer. If **square** is None, **square** is defined by using **mul**.

3.1.6 powering_func – function of powering

```
powering_func(mul: function, square: function=None, one: object=None, type: integer=0 )  
    → function
```

Return a function which computes 'element' to the 'index' power from an object 'element' and an integer 'index'.

If `square` is `None`, `square` is defined by using `mul`. `type` should be an integer which means one of the following:

```
0; rl_binary_powering  
1; lr_binary_powering  
2; window_powering
```

Examples

```
>>> d_func = algorithm.digital_method_func(  
... lambda a,b:a+b, lambda a,b:a*b, lambda i,a:i*a, lambda a,i:a**i,  
... matrix.zeroMatrix(3,0), matrix.identityMatrix(3,1)  
... )  
>>> coefficients = [(2,1), (1,2), (0,1)] # X^2+2*X+I  
>>> A = matrix.SquareMatrix(3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])  
>>> d_func(coefficients, A) # A**2+2*A+I  
[33, 40, 48]+[74, 92, 108]+[116, 142, 169]  
>>> p_func = algorithm.powering_func(lambda a,b:a*b, type=2)  
>>> p_func(A, 10) # A**10 by window method  
[132476037840, 162775103256, 193074168672]+[300005963406, 368621393481,  
437236823556]+[467535888972, 574467683706, 681399478440]
```

3.2 arith1 - miscellaneous arithmetic functions

3.2.1 floorsqrt – floor of square root

`floorsqrt(a: integer/Rational) → integer`

Return the floor of square root of `a`.

3.2.2 floorpowerroot – floor of some power root

`floorpowerroot(n: integer, k: integer) → integer`

Return the floor of `k`-th power root of `n`.

3.2.3 legendre - Legendre(Jacobi) Symbol

`legendre(a: integer, m: integer) → integer`

Return the Legendre symbol or Jacobi symbol $\left(\frac{a}{m}\right)$.

3.2.4 modsqrt – square root of a for modulo p

`modsqrt(a: integer, p: integer) → integer`

Return one of the square roots of `a` for modulo `p` if square roots exist, raise `ValueError` otherwise.

`p` must be a prime number.

3.2.5 expand – m -adic expansion

`expand(n: integer, m: integer) → list`

Return the `m`-adic expansion of `n`.

`n` must be nonnegative integer. `m` must be greater than or equal to 2. The output is a list of expansion coefficients in ascending order.

3.2.6 inverse – inverse

inverse(*x*: *integer*, *n*: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the inverse of *x* for modulo *n*.

n must be coprime to *x*.

3.2.7 CRT – Chinese Remainder Theorem

CRT(*nlist*: *list*) → *n*: *integer*

Return the uniquely determined *integer n* satisfying all congruence conditions given by *nlist*.

Given *nlist* is one *list* (or *tuple*) consisting of *tuples* (or *lists*) of 2 *integers*:

$$\mathbf{nlist} = [(a_0, m_0), \dots, (a_{r-1}, m_{r-1})], \quad r = \text{len}(\mathbf{nlist}) > 0,$$

for $0 \leq i < r$, arbitrary *integers* *remainders* a_i and special *integers* *moduli* m_i satisfying the condition

$$m_i > 1 \quad (0 \leq i < r), \quad \text{GCD}(m_i, m_j) = 1 \quad (0 \leq i < j < r).$$

Return unique *integer n* with $0 \leq n < N = \prod_{i=0}^{r-1} m_i$ such that

$$n \equiv a_i \pmod{m_i} \quad (0 \leq i < r).$$

3.2.8 CRT_ – Chinese Remainder Theorem (moduli fixed)

CRT_(*nlist*: *list*, *M*: *moddata*=1) → *n*: *integer*, *moddata*

Return the uniquely determined *integer n* satisfying all congruence conditions given by *nlist*. Process and result are almost equal to **CRT** except efficiency when computing repeatedly for a fixed *moduli*.

If *M* = 1, then *moddata*, precomputable from *moduli* alone independent of *remainders*, is computed and returned together with *integer n*.

At the next chance to solve the problem for the same *moduli* but a different *remainders*, apply **CRT_**(*nlist*, *M* = *moddata*) and skip the process of computing *moddata*. Anyway *moddata* is always returned together with *integer n*.

As a reference *moddata* is a *list* of length 3 and $\text{moddata}[0] = \prod_{i=0}^{r-1} m_i = N$.

3.2.9 CRT_Gauss – Chinese Remainder Theorem by Gauss

CRT_Gauss(a: list, m: list, P: moddata=1) → x: integer, moddata

Return the uniquely determined *integer* x satisfying all congruence conditions given by remainders $\mathbf{a}$ and moduli $\mathbf{m}$. Idea and result are almost equal to **CRT_** except every modulus in $\mathbf{m}$ is treated in parallel this time. So the process is simpler, but the data size is larger.

Input $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{m}$ are *lists* of *integers* of length $k > 0$, and $m[n] > 1$ ($0 \leq n < k$), $\text{GCD}(m[n], m[l]) = 1$ ($0 \leq n < l < k$). Return *integer* x is uniquely determined by $0 \leq x < N = \prod_{n=0}^{k-1} m[n]$ such that $x \equiv a[n] \pmod{m[n]}$ ($0 \leq n < k$).

If $P = 1$, then *moddata* precomputable from $\mathbf{m}$ alone is computed and returned together with *integer* x .

In the next chance to solve the problem for the same $\mathbf{m}$ but a different $\mathbf{a}$, apply **CRT_Gauss(a, m, P = moddata)** and skip the process of computing *moddata*. Anyway *moddata* is returned together with x .

As a reference *moddata* is a *list* of length 3 and $\text{moddata}[0] = \prod_{n=0}^{k-1} m[n]$.

3.2.10 AGM – Arithmetic Geometric Mean

AGM(a: integer, b: integer) → float

Return the Arithmetic-Geometric Mean of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

3.2.11 vp – p-adic valuation

vp(n: integer, p: integer, k: integer=0) → tuple

Return the p -adic valuation and other part for $\mathbf{n}$.

†If k is given, return the valuation and the other part for $\mathbf{n}p^k$.

3.2.12 issquare - Is it square?

issquare(n: integer) → integer

Check if $\mathbf{n}$ is a square number and return square root of $\mathbf{n}$ if $\mathbf{n}$ is a square. Otherwise, return 0.

3.2.13 log – integer part of logarithm

`log(n: integer, base: integer=2) → integer`

Return the integer part of logarithm of `n` to the `base`.

3.2.14 product – product of some numbers

`product(iterable: list, init: object=None) → prod: object`

Return the products of all elements in `iterable`.

If `init` is given, the multiplication starts with `init` instead of the first element in `iterable`.

Input list `iterable` must be list of mathematical objects which support multiplication.

The type of output `prod` is determined by the types of elements of `iterable` and `init`.

If the `iterable` is empty, then `init` (if given) or 1 (otherwise) will be returned.

Examples

```
>>> arith1.AGM(10, 15)
12.373402181181522
>>> arith1.CRT([[2, 5], [3, 7]])
17
>>> arith1.CRT([[2, 5], [3, 7], [5, 11]])
192
>>> arith1.expand(194, 5)
[4, 3, 2, 1]
>>> arith1.vp(54, 3)
(3, 2)
>>> arith1.product([1.5, 2, 2.5])
7.5
>>> arith1.product([3, 4], 2)
24
>>> arith1.product([])
1
```

3.3 arygcd – binary-like gcd algorithms

3.3.1 bit_num – the number of bits

bit_num(a: integer) → integer

Return the number of bits for **a**

3.3.2 binarygcd – gcd by the binary algorithm

binarygcd(a: integer, b: integer) → integer

Return the greatest common divisor (gcd) of two integers **a**, **b** by the binary gcd algorithm.

3.3.3 arygcd_i – gcd over gauss-integer

**arygcd_i(a1: integer, a2: integer, b1: integer, b2: integer)
→ (integer, integer)**

Return the greatest common divisor (gcd) of two gauss-integers **a1+a2i**, **b1+b2i**, where “*i*” denotes the imaginary unit.

If the output of **arygcd_i(a1, a2, b1, b2)** is (**c1**, **c2**), then the gcd of **a1+a2i** and **b1+b2i** equals **c1+c2i**.

†This function uses $(1+i)$ -ary gcd algorithm, which is an generalization of the binary algorithm, proposed by A.Weilert[22].

3.3.4 arygcd_w – gcd over Eisenstein-integer

**arygcd_w(a1: integer, a2: integer, b1: integer, b2: integer)
→ (integer, integer)**

Return the greatest common divisor (gcd) of two Eisenstein-integers **a1+a2ω**, **b1+b2ω**, where “ ω ” denotes a primitive cubic root of unity.

If the output of **arygcd_w(a1, a2, b1, b2)** is (**c1**, **c2**), then the gcd of **a1+a2ω** and **b1+b2ω** equals **c1+c2ω**.

†This functions uses $(1-\omega)$ -ary gcd algorithm, which is an generalization of the binary algorithm, proposed by I.B. Damgård and G.S. Frandsen [16].

Examples

```
>>> arygcd.binarygcd(32, 48)
16
>>> arygcd_i(1, 13, 13, 9)
(-3, 1)
>>> arygcd_w(2, 13, 33, 15)
(4, 5)
```

3.4 combinatorial – combinatorial functions

3.4.1 binomial – binomial coefficient

binomial(*n*: integer, *m*: integer) → integer

Return the binomial coefficient for *n* and *m*. In other words, $\frac{n!}{(n-m)!m!}$.

†For convenience, **binomial**(*n*, *n*+*i*) returns 0 for positive *i*, and **binomial**(0,0) returns 1.

n must be a positive integer and *m* must be a non-negative integer.

3.4.2 combinationIndexGenerator – iterator for combinations

combinationIndexGenerator(*n*: integer, *m*: integer) → iterator

Return an iterator which generates indices of *m* element subsets of *n* element set.

The number of generated indices is **binomial**(*n*, *m*).

`combination_index_generator` is an alias of `combinationIndexGenerator`.

3.4.3 factorial – factorial

factorial(*n*: integer) → integer

Return *n*! for non-negative integer *n*.

3.4.4 permutationGenerator – iterator for permutation

permutationGenerator(*n*: integer) → iterator

Generate all permutations of *n* elements as list iterator.

The number of generated list is *n*'s **factorial**, so be careful to use big *n*.

`permutation_generator` is an alias of `permutationGenerator`.

3.4.5 fallingfactorial – the falling factorial

fallingfactorial(*n*: *integer*, *m*: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the falling factorial; *n* to the *m* falling, i.e. $n(n-1)\cdots(n-m+1)$.

3.4.6 risingfactorial – the rising factorial

risingfactorial(*n*: *integer*, *m*: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the rising factorial; *n* to the *m* rising, i.e. $n(n+1)\cdots(n+m-1)$.

3.4.7 multinomial – the multinomial coefficient

multinomial(*n*: *integer*, *parts*: *list*) → *integer*

Return the multinomial coefficient.

parts must be a sequence of natural numbers and the sum of elements in *parts* should be equal to *n*.

3.4.8 bernoulli – the Bernoulli number

bernoulli(*n*: *integer*) → *Rational*

Return the *n*-th Bernoulli number.

3.4.9 catalan – the Catalan number

catalan(*n*: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the *n*-th Catalan number.

3.4.10 dyck_word_generator – generator for Dyck words

dyck_word_generator(*n*: *integer* *alphabet*: *sequence*=(0, 1))
→ *iterator*

Generate all Dyck words of length $2\times n$ as tuples.

The Dyck words are words on a two character alphabet. The number of each

character in a word is equal, and the number of the second character never exceeds the first in any initial parts of the word.

The number of generated words is the n -th Catalan number. (see **catalan**)

The alphabet is $\{0, 1\}$ by default, but you can pass it into the optional argument **alphabet**.

3.4.11 euler – the Euler number

euler(n : *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *integer*

Return the n -th Euler number.

3.4.12 bell – the Bell number

bell(n : *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *integer*

Return the n -th Bell number.

The Bell number b is defined by:

$$b(n) = \sum_{i=0}^n S(n, i),$$

where S denotes Stirling number of the second kind (**stirling2**).

3.4.13 stirring1 – Stirling number of the first kind

stirling1(n : *integer*, m : *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *integer*

Return Stirling number of the first kind.

Let s denote the Stirling number and $(x)_n$ the falling factorial, then

$$(x)_n = \sum_{i=0}^n s(n, i) x^i.$$

s satisfies the recurrence relation:

$$s(n, m) = s(n-1, m-1) - (n-1)s(n-1, m).$$

3.4.14 `stirling2` – Stirling number of the second kind

`stirling2(n: integer, m: integer) → integer`

Return Stirling number of the second kind.

Let S denote the Stirling number, $(x)_i$ falling factorial, then:

$$x^n = \sum_{i=0}^n S(n, i)(x)_i$$

S satisfies:

$$S(n, m) = S(n-1, m-1) + mS(n-1, m)$$

3.4.15 `partition_number` – the number of partitions

`partition_number(n: integer) → integer`

Return the number of partitions of n .

3.4.16 `partitionGenerator` – iterator for partition

`partitionGenerator(n: integer, maxi: integer=0) → iterator`

Return an iterator which generates partitions of n .

If `maxi` is given, then summands are limited not to exceed `maxi`.

The number of partitions (given by `partition_number`) grows exponentially, so be careful to use big n .

`partition_generator` is an alias of `partitionGenerator`.

3.4.17 `partition_conjugate` – the conjugate of partition

`partition_conjugate(partition: tuple) → tuple`

Return the conjugate of `partition`.

Examples

```
>>> combinatorial.binomial(5, 2)
10
>>> combinatorial.factorial(3)
6
>>> combinatorial.fallingfactorial(7, 3) == 7 * 6 * 5
True
>>> combinatorial.risingfactorial(7, 3) == 7 * 8 * 9
True
>>> combinatorial.multinomial(7, [2, 2, 3])
210
>>> for idx in combinatorial.combinationIndexGenerator(5, 3):
...     print(idx)
...
[0, 1, 2]
[0, 1, 3]
[0, 1, 4]
[0, 2, 3]
[0, 2, 4]
[0, 3, 4]
[1, 2, 3]
[1, 2, 4]
[1, 3, 4]
[2, 3, 4]
>>> for word in combinatorial.dyck_word_generator(3, alphabet=("(", ")")):
...     print("".join(word))
...
()()()
()(())
(())()
(()())
((()))
>>> for part in combinatorial.partitionGenerator(5):
...     print(part)
...
(5,)
(4, 1)
(3, 2)
(3, 1, 1)
(2, 2, 1)
(2, 1, 1, 1)
(1, 1, 1, 1, 1)
>>> combinatorial.partition_number(5)
7
>>> def limited_summands(n, maxi):
```

```

...     "partition with limited number of summands"
...     for part in combinatorial.partitionGenerator(n, maxi):
...         yield combinatorial.partition_conjugate(part)
...
>>> for part in limited_summands(5, 3):
...     print(part)
...
(2, 2, 1)
(3, 1, 1)
(3, 2)
(4, 1)
(5,)

```

3.5 cubic_root – cubic root, residue, and so on

3.5.1 c_root_p – cubic root mod p

c_root_p(a: integer, p: integer) → list

Return the cubic root of **a** modulo prime **p**. (i.e. solutions of the equation $x^3 = a \pmod{p}$).

p must be a prime integer.
This function returns the list of all cubic roots of **a**.

3.5.2 c_residue – cubic residue mod p

c_residue(a: integer, p: integer) → integer

Check whether the rational integer **a** is cubic residue modulo prime **p**.

If $p \mid a$, then this function returns 0, elif **a** is cubic residue modulo **p**, then it returns 1, otherwise (i.e. cubic non-residue), it returns -1 .

p must be a prime integer.

3.5.3 c_symbol – cubic residue symbol for Eisenstein-integers

**c_symbol(a1: integer, a2: integer, b1: integer, b2: integer)
→ integer**

Return the (Jacobi) cubic residue symbol of two Eisenstein-integers $\left(\frac{a1+a2\omega}{b1+b2\omega}\right)_3$, where ω is a primitive cubic root of unity.

If $b1 + b2\omega$ is a prime in $\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$, it shows $a1 + a2\omega$ is cubic residue or not.

We assume that $b1 + b2\omega$ is not divisible $1 - \omega$.

3.5.4 decompose_p – decomposition to Eisenstein-integers

decompose_p(p: integer) → (integer, integer)

Return one of prime factors of **p** in $\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$.

If the output is (**a**, **b**), then $\frac{p}{a+b\omega}$ is a prime in $\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$. In other words, **p**

decomposes into two prime factors $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\omega$ and $\mathbf{p}/(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}\omega)$ in $\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$.

$\mathbf{p}$ must be a prime rational integer. We assume that $\mathbf{p} \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$.

3.5.5 cornacchia – solve $x^2 + dy^2 = p$

cornacchia(d: integer, p: integer) → (integer, integer)

Return the solution of $x^2 + dy^2 = p$.

This function uses Cornacchia's algorithm. See [13].

$\mathbf{p}$ must be prime rational integer. $\mathbf{d}$ must be satisfied with the condition $0 < \mathbf{d} < \mathbf{p}$. This function returns (x, y) as one of solutions of the equation $x^2 + dy^2 = p$.

Examples

```
>>> cubic_root.c_root_p(1, 13)
[1, 3, 9]
>>> cubic_root.c_residue(2, 7)
-1
>>> cubic_root.c_symbol(3, 6, 5, 6)
1
>>> cubic_root.decomposiite_p(19)
(2, 5)
>>> cubic_root.cornacchia(5, 29)
(3, 2)
```

3.6 cyclotomic – cyclotomic polynomial and related topics

3.6.1 cycloPoly – the cyclotomic polynomial explicitly

cycloPoly(n: integer) → IntegerPolynomial

Return the n -th cyclotomic polynomial. In the literature, the polynomial is referred often as Φ_n . Its definition is

$$\Phi_n(x) = \prod_{0 < k < n, \text{GCD}(k,n)=1} (x - \zeta^k),$$

where $\zeta = \exp\left(\frac{2\pi\sqrt{-1}}{n}\right)$. To compute the coefficients exactly, several recursive formulas are applied.

3.6.2 cycloMoebius – the cyclotomic polynomial by Möbius function

cycloMoebius(n: integer) → IntegerPolynomial

Return the n -th cyclotomic polynomial computing by the formula

$$\Phi_n(x) = \prod_{d|n} \left(x^{n/d} - 1\right)^{\mu(d)},$$

where μ is the **Möbius function**.

Bellow, `IntegerPolynomial([(0, 1), (6, -1), (12, 1)], IntegerRing())` represents polynomial $1 - x^6 + x^{12}$.

Examples

```
>>> cycloPoly(7)
IntegerPolynomial([(0, 1), (1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1), (4, 1), (5, 1), (6, 1)],
IntegerRing())
>>> cycloPoly(36)
IntegerPolynomial([(0, 1), (6, -1), (12, 1)], IntegerRing())
>>> cycloPoly(5)
IntegerPolynomial([(0, 1), (1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1), (4, 1)], IntegerRing())
>>> cycloMoebius(5)
IntegerPolynomial([(0, 1), (1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1), (4, 1)], IntegerRing())
>>> cycloMoebius(105)
IntegerPolynomial([(0, 1), (1, 1), (2, 1), (5, -1), (6, -1), (7, -2), (8, -1),
(9, -1), (12, 1), (13, 1), (14, 1), (15, 1), (16, 1), (17, 1), (20, -1),
(22, -1), (24, -1), (26, -1), (28, -1), (31, 1), (32, 1), (33, 1), (34, 1),
```

```
(35, 1), (36, 1), (39, -1), (40, -1), (41, -2), (42, -1), (43, -1), (46, 1),  
(47, 1), (48, 1)], IntegerRing())
```

3.7 ecpp – elliptic curve primality proving

The module consists of various functions for ECPP (Elliptic Curve Primality Proving).

It is probable that the module will be refactored in the future so that each function be placed in other modules.

The ecpp module requires `mpmath`.

3.7.1 ecpp – elliptic curve primality proving

ecpp(*n*: *integer*, *era*: *list*=None) → *bool*

Do elliptic curve primality proving.
If *n* is prime, return True. Otherwise, return False.

The optional argument *era* is a list of primes (which stands for ERAtosthenes).

n must be a big integer.

3.7.2 hilbert – Hilbert class polynomial

hilbert(*D*: *integer*) → (*integer*, *list*)

Return the class number and Hilbert class polynomial for the imaginary quadratic field with fundamental discriminant *D*.

Note that this function returns Hilbert class polynomial as a list of coefficients.

If the data corresponding to *D* is not found, compute the Hilbert polynomial directly (for a long time).

D must be negative int. See [15].

3.7.3 dedekind – Dedekind’s eta function

dedekind(*tau*: *mpmath.mpc*, *floatpre*: *integer*) → *mpmath.mpc*

Return Dedekind’s eta of a complex number *tau* in the upper half-plane.

Additional argument *floatpre* specifies the precision of calculation in decimal digits.

`floatpre` must be positive int.

3.7.4 `cmm` – CM method

`cmm(p: integer) → list`

Return curve parameters for CM curves.

If you also need its orders, use **`cmm_order`**.

A prime `p` has to be odd.

This function returns a list of `(a, b)`, where `(a, b)` expresses Weierstrass' short form.

3.7.5 `cmm_order` – CM method with order

`cmm_order(p: integer) → list`

Return curve parameters for CM curves and its orders.

If you need only curves, use **`cmm_order`**.

A prime `p` has to be odd.

This function returns a list of `(a, b, order)`, where `(a, b)` expresses Weierstrass' short form and `order` is the order of the curve.

3.7.6 `cornacchiamodify` – Modified cornacchia algorithm

`cornacchiamodify(d: integer, p: integer) → list`

Return the solution (u, v) of $u^2 - dv^2 = 4p$.

If there is no solution, raise `ValueError`.

`p` must be a prime integer and `d` be an integer such that $d < 0$ and $d > -4p$ with $d \equiv 0, 1 \pmod{4}$.

Examples

```
>>> ecpp.ecpp(300000000000000000053)
True
>>> ecpp.hilbert(-7)
(1, [3375, 1])
```



```
>>> ecpp.cmm(7)
[(6, 3), (5, 4)]
>>> ecpp.cornacchiamodify(-7, 29)
(2, 4)
```

3.8 equation – solving equations, congruences

In the following descriptions, some type aliases are used.

poly_list :

poly_list is a *list* $[a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n]$ representing a polynomial coefficients in ascending order, i.e., meaning $a_0 + a_1X + \dots + a_nX^n$. The type of each a_i depends on each function (explained in their descriptions).

integer :

integer is one of *int* or ***Integer***.

complex :

complex includes all number types in the complex field: ***integer***, *float*, *complex* of Python, ***Rational*** of NZMATH, etc.

3.8.1 e1 – solve equation with degree 1

e1(f: *poly_list*) → *complex*

Return the solution of linear equation $ax + b = 0$.

f ought to be a ***poly_list*** [b, a] of ***complex***.

3.8.2 e1_ZnZ – solve congruent equation modulo n with degree 1

e1_ZnZ(f: *poly_list*, n: *integer*) → (d:*integer*, T:*list*)

Return the solution of $ax + b \equiv 0 \pmod{n}$.

f ought to be a ***poly_list*** [b, a] of ***integer***.

Returned tuple (d, T) is, first d is the GCD of a, n, next T is the list of all solutions. If and only if d does not divide b, there is no solution and T = []. In case otherwise, there is a solution s, $0 \leq s < n/d$, and T = list(range(s, n, n/d)).

3.8.3 e2 – solve equation with degree 2

e2(f: *poly_list*) → *tuple*

Return the solution of quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$.

f ought to be a ***poly_list*** [c, b, a] of ***complex***.

The result tuple will contain exactly 2 roots, even in the case of double root.

3.8.4 e2_Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p with degree 2

e2_Fp(f: *poly_list*, p: *integer*) → *list*

Return the solution of $ax^2 + bx + c \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

If the same values are returned, then the values are multiple roots.

f ought to be a *poly_list* of *integers* [c, b, a]. In addition, p must be a prime *integer*.

3.8.5 e3 – solve equation with degree 3

e3(f: *poly_list*) → *list*

Return the solution of cubic equation $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$.

f ought to be a *poly_list* [d, c, b, a] of *complex*.

The result tuple will contain exactly 3 roots, even in the case of including double roots.

3.8.6 e3_Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p with degree 3

e3_Fp(f: *poly_list*, p: *integer*) → *list*

Return the solutions of $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

If the same values are returned, then the values are multiple roots.

f ought be a *poly_list* [d, c, b, a] of *integer*. In addition, p must be a prime *integer*.

3.8.7 `liftup_ZpnZ` – congruence modulo prime to power of prime

`liftup_ZpnZ(p: integer, N: integer, f: IntegerPolynomial, x0: integer)`
 $\rightarrow$ *list*

Given a polynomial congruence solution modulo a prime, lift it up to the solutions modulo prime power.

For a prime number p , a positive integer N and a non-zero *IntegerPolynomial* f , let $x0$ be an integer such that $f(x0) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

Returns the *list* of all integers z (solutions) such that

$$-p^N/2 < z \leq p^N/2, \quad z \equiv x0 \pmod{p}, \quad f(z) \equiv 0 \pmod{p^N}.$$

3.8.8 `allroots_ZnZ` – all solutions of any polynomial congruence

`allroots_ZnZ(f: IntegerPolynomial, m: list)` $\rightarrow$ (*roots: list*, *res: list*)

Solve by `allroots_Fp` over finite prime fields, lift up moduli to prime power by `liftup_ZpnZ` and apply the `CRT_` (Chinese Remainder Theorem) .

Let f be a non-zero *IntegerPolynomial* and m be a *factorlist* with its product $N = \prod_{(p,a) \in m} p^a > 1$.

Returns the *list* *roots* of all integers X (solutions) such that

$$-N/2 < X \leq N/2, \quad f(X) \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$$

and the *list* *res* of all *lists* Z (local solutions) such that

$$Z = Z(p, a) = \left[z \mid -p^a/2 < z \leq p^a/2, \quad f(z) \equiv 0 \pmod{p^a} \right] \quad ((p, a) \in m).$$

In any case, the product N will not be returned.

3.8.9 `Newton` – solve equation using Newton's method

`Newton(f: poly_list, initial: complex=1, repeat: integer=250)`
 $\rightarrow$ *complex*

Return one of the approximated roots of $a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 = 0$.

If you want to obtain all roots, then use `SimMethod` instead.

†If `initial` is a real number but there is no real roots, then this function returns meaningless values.

`f` ought to be a *poly_list* of *complex*. `initial` is an initial approximation *complex* number. `repeat` is the number of steps to approximate a root.

3.8.10 SimMethod – find all roots simultaneously

SimMethod(`f`: *poly_list*, `NewtonInitial`: *complex*=1, `repeat`: *integer*=250)
→ *list*

Return the approximated roots of $a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$.

†If the equation has multiple root, maybe raise some error.

`f` ought to be a *poly_list* of *complex*.
`NewtonInitial` and `repeat` will be passed to **Newton** to obtain the first approximations.

3.8.11 root_Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p

root_Fp(`f`: *poly_list*, `p`: *integer*) → *integer*

Return one of the roots of $a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

If you want to obtain all roots, then use **allroots_Fp**.

`f` ought to be a *poly_list* of *integer*. In addition, `p` must be a prime *integer*.
If there is no root at all, then nothing will be returned.

3.8.12 allroots_Fp – solve congruent equation modulo p

allroots_Fp(`f`: *poly_list*, `p`: *integer*) → *integer*

Return all roots of $a_n x^n + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

`f` ought to be a *poly_list* of *integer*. In addition, `p` must be a prime *integer*.
If there is no root at all, then an empty list will be returned.

Examples

```

>>> equation.e1([1, 2])
-0.5
>>> equation.e1([1j, 2])
-0.5j
>>> equation.e1_ZnZ([3, 2], 5)
1
>>> equation.e2([-3, 1, 1])
(1.3027756377319946, -2.3027756377319948)
>>> equation.e2_Fp([-3, 1, 1], 13)
[6, 6]
>>> equation.e3([1, 1, 2, 1])
[(-0.12256116687665397-0.74486176661974479j),
 (-1.7548776662466921+1.8041124150158794e-16j),
 (-0.12256116687665375+0.74486176661974468j)]
>>> equation.e3_Fp([1, 1, 2, 1], 7)
[3]
>>> equation.Newton([-3, 2, 1, 1])
0.84373427789806899
>>> equation.Newton([-3, 2, 1, 1], 2)
0.84373427789806899
>>> equation.Newton([-3, 2, 1, 1], 2, 1000)
0.84373427789806899
>>> equation.SimMethod([-3, 2, 1, 1])
[(0.84373427789806887+0j),
 (-0.92186713894903438+1.6449263775999723j),
 (-0.92186713894903438-1.6449263775999723j)]
>>> equation.root_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 7)
>>> equation.root_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 11)
9
>>> equation.allroots_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 7)
[]
>>> equation.allroots_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 11)
[9]
>>> equation.allroots_Fp([-3, 2, 1, 1], 13)
[3, 7, 2]

```

3.9 gcd – gcd algorithm

3.9.1 gcd – the greatest common divisor

gcd(a: integer, b: integer) → integer

Return the greatest common divisor of two integers **a** and **b**.

Return 0 if **a** = **b** = 0, though 0 cannot be any divisor.

a, **b** must be int or **Integer**. Even if one of the arguments is negative, the result is non-negative.

3.9.2 binarygcd – binary gcd algorithm

binarygcd(a: integer, b: integer) → integer

Return the greatest common divisor of two integers **a** and **b** by binary gcd algorithm.

Return 0 if **a** = **b** = 0, though 0 cannot be any divisor.

†This function is an alias of **binarygcd**

a, **b** must be int or **Integer**.

3.9.3 extgcd – extended gcd algorithm

extgcd(a: integer, b: integer) → (integer, integer, integer)

Return the greatest common divisor d of two integers **a** and **b** and u , v such that $d = au + bv$.

Return (1, 0, 0) if **a** = **b** = 0, though 0 cannot be any divisor.

a, **b** must be int or **Integer**. The returned value is a tuple (u , v , d).

3.9.4 lcm – the least common multiple

lcm(a: integer, b: integer) → integer

Return the least common multiple of two integers **a** and **b**.

Return 0 if only one of them is 0 though there is no multiple of 0.
 ‡If both **a** and **b** are zero, then it raises an exception.

a, **b** must be int or **Integer**.

3.9.5 gcd_of_list – gcd of many integers

gcd_of_list(integers: list) → list

Return gcd of integers with representing linear form together.

Given list **integers** = $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$, return list $[d, [c_1, \dots, c_n]]$ such that $d = c_1x_1 + \dots + c_nx_n$, where d is the greatest common divisor of $x_1, \dots, x_n$.

Here **integers** is list whose elements are int. Above $d, c_1, \dots, c_n$ are all integers. Return $[0, \text{integers}]$ if **integers** is $[0, \dots, 0]$ or $[\]$ though 0 cannot be any divisor.

3.9.6 extgcd_ – extended divmod gcd for many integers

extgcd_(*a: integers) → list

Return gcd of many integers together with representing linear form.

Given integers **a** = $a_0, \dots, a_{n-1}$, return list $[d, [x_0, \dots, x_{n-1}]]$ such that $d = a_0x_0 + \dots + a_{n-1}x_{n-1}$, where d is the greatest common divisor of **a**. We use **divmodl** for computation. The linear form is not unique and general solution for $[x_0, \dots, x_{n-1}]$ is given by **extgcd_gen**.

There should be at least one non-zero integer in **a**.

3.9.7 divmodl – division of minimum absolute remainder

divmodl(a: integer, b: integer) → integers

For given **a**, **b**, return a pair (q, r) of integers such that $\mathbf{a} = q\mathbf{b} + r$, $|r| \leq |\mathbf{b}|/2$.

Of course **b** $\neq 0$. We take one of the ways for (q, r) to satisfy the condition.

3.9.8 extgcd_gen – general solution of linear diophantine equation

extgcd_gen **extgcd_gen(*a: integers) → list**

Return general solution of given linear diophantine equation.

For given integers $\mathbf{a} = a_0, \dots, a_{n-1}$ and any integer k , solve the linear diophantine equation $a_0x_0 + \dots + a_{n-1}x_{n-1} = k$, and return list $[d, s, A]$ as general solution. Here d is the GCD of $\mathbf{a}$, and it is solvable if and only if d divides k . When d divides k , general solution $x_0, \dots, x_{n-1}$ is given by suffix s ($0 \leq s < n$), by list of list $A = [[A_{0,0}, \dots, A_{0,n-1}], \dots, [A_{n-1,0}, \dots, A_{n-1,n-1}]]$ and by integer parameter $y_0, \dots, y_{n-1}$ with unique constant $y_s = k/d$ as follows:

$$x_i = A_{i,0}y_0 + \dots + A_{i,n-1}y_{n-1} \quad (0 \leq i < n)$$

For $\mathbf{a}$, at least one non-zero integer is required.

3.9.9 gcd_ – the GCD of many integers by modl division

gcd_ **gcd_(*a: integers) → integer**

Compute the GCD for many integers $\mathbf{a}$ at a time. For speed up, euclidian division is executed in parallel by employing the least absolute value remainder **modl**.

We did no experiment about speed.

For $\mathbf{a}$, at least one non-zero integer is required.

3.9.10 modl – least absolute value remainder by division

modl **modl(a: integer, b: integer) → integer**

For given $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, return residue r of integer such that $\mathbf{a} \equiv r \pmod{|\mathbf{b}|}$, $|r| \leq |\mathbf{b}|/2$.

Of course $\mathbf{b} \neq 0$. We take one of the ways for r to satisfy the condition.

3.9.11 lcm_ – the LCM of integers by repeating gcd_

lcm_ **lcm_(*a: integers) → integer**

By repeated use of **gcd_**, compute the LCM of many integers **a** at a time.

All integers in **a** should be non-zero. We do not consider any multiple of 0. Or 0 cannot be a divisor of any integer.

3.9.12 coprime – coprime check

coprime(a: integer, b: integer) → bool

Return True if **a** and **b** are coprime, False otherwise.

a, **b** are int or **Integer**.

3.9.13 pairwise_coprime – coprime check of many integers

pairwise_coprime(integers: list) → bool

Return True if all integers in **integers** are pairwise coprime, False otherwise.

integers is a list which elements are int or **Integer**.

3.9.14 part_frac – partial fraction decomposition

part_frac(m: list, x: integer) → (list, integer)

For the product **M** of the *integers* in the *list* **m** and *integer* **x**, compute the partial fraction decomposition of the irreducible fraction **x**/**M**.

Application of extended GCD to solve linear indeterminate equation.

Input *list* **m** should be non-empty and its elements should be pairwise coprime *integers* > 1. The numerator **x** should be positive and coprime to **M**.

Output is (**X**, **s**), which is uniquely determined as bellow. Here **X** is the *integer list* of numerators of partial fraction decomposition of **x**/**M** and **s** is *integer* such that

$$\frac{x}{M} = \sum_{0 \leq i < k} \frac{X[i]}{m[i]} + s, \quad 0 < X[i] < m[i] \quad (0 \leq i < k),$$

where **k** is the length of **m**. All **X**[**i**]/**m**[**i**] ($0 \leq i < k$) are irreducible fractions.

Examples

```
>>> gcd.gcd(12, 18)
6
>>> gcd.gcd(12, -18)
6
>>> gcd.gcd(-12, -18)
6
>>> gcd.extgcd(12, -18)
(-1, -1, 6)
>>> gcd.extgcd(-12, -18)
(1, -1, 6)
>>> gcd.extgcd(0, -18)
(0, -1, 18)
>>> gcd.lcm(12, 18)
36
>>> gcd.lcm(12, -18)
-36
>>> gcd.gcd_of_list([60, 90, 210])
[30, [-1, 1, 0]]
```

3.10 multiplicative – multiplicative number theoretic functions

All functions of this module accept only positive integers, unless otherwise noted.

3.10.1 euler – the Euler totient function

euler(n: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the number of numbers relatively prime to **n** and smaller than **n**. In the literature, the function is referred often as φ .

3.10.2 moebius – the Möbius function

moebius(n: *integer*) → *integer*

Return:

- 1 if **n** has odd distinct prime factors,
- 1 if **n** has even distinct prime factors, or
- 0 if **n** has a squared prime factor.

In the literature, the function is referred often as μ .

3.10.3 sigma – sum of divisor powers)

sigma(m: *integer*, n: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the sum of **m**-th powers of the factors of **n**. The argument **m** can be zero, then return the number of factors. In the literature, the function is referred often as σ .

Examples

```
>>> multiplicative.euler(1)
1
>>> multiplicative.euler(2)
1
>>> multiplicative.euler(4)
2
>>> multiplicative.euler(5)
4
>>> multiplicative.moebius(1)
1
>>> multiplicative.moebius(2)
```

```
-1
>>> multiplicative.moebius(4)
0
>>> multiplicative.moebius(6)
1
>>> multiplicative.sigma(0, 1)
1
>>> multiplicative.sigma(1, 1)
1
>>> multiplicative.sigma(0, 2)
2
>>> multiplicative.sigma(1, 3)
4
>>> multiplicative.sigma(1, 4)
7
>>> multiplicative.sigma(1, 6)
12
>>> multiplicative.sigma(2, 7)
50
```

3.11 prime – primality test , prime generation

3.11.1 trialDivision – trial division test

trialDivision(*n*: *integer*, bound: *integer/float=0*) → *True/False*

Trial division primality test for an odd natural number.

bound is a search bound of primes. If it returns 1 under the condition that bound is given and less than the square root of *n*, it only means there is no prime factor less than bound.

3.11.2 spsp – strong pseudo-prime test

spsp(*n*: *integer*, base: *integer*, *s*: *integer=*None, *t*: *integer=*None)
→ *True/False*

Strong Pseudo-Prime test on base base.

s and *t* are the numbers such that $n - 1 = 2^s t$ and *t* is odd.

3.11.3 smallSpsp – strong pseudo-prime test for small number

smallSpsp(*n*: *integer*, *s*: *integer=*None, *t*: *integer=*None)
→ *True/False*

Strong Pseudo-Prime test for integer *n* less than 10^{12} .

4 spsp tests are sufficient to determine whether an integer less than 10^{12} is prime or not.

s and *t* are the numbers such that $n - 1 = 2^s t$ and *t* is odd.

3.11.4 miller – Miller’s primality test

miller(*n*: *integer*) → *True/False*

Miller’s primality test.

This test is valid under GRH. See [config](#).

3.11.5 millerRabin – Miller-Rabin primality test

millerRabin(*n*: *integer*, times: *integer=*20) → *True/False*

Miller’s primality test.

The difference from **miller** is that the Miller-Rabin method uses fast but probabilistic algorithm. On the other hand, **miller** employs deterministic algorithm valid under GRH.

times (default to 20) is the number of repetition. The error probability is at most $4^{-\text{times}}$.

3.11.6 **lpsp** – Lucas test

lpsp(*n: integer, a: integer, b: integer*) $\rightarrow$ *True/False*

Lucas Pseudo-Prime test.

Return True if *n* is a Lucas pseudo-prime of parameters *a*, *b*, i.e. with respect to $x^2 - ax + b$.

3.11.7 **fpsp** – Frobenius test

fpsp(*n: integer, a: integer, b: integer*) $\rightarrow$ *True/False*

Frobenius Pseudo-Prime test.

Return True if *n* is a Frobenius pseudo-prime of parameters *a*, *b*, i.e. with respect to $x^2 - ax + b$.

3.11.8 **by_primitive_root** – Lehmer’s test

by_primitive_root(*n: integer, divisors: sequence*)
 $\rightarrow$ *True/False*

Lehmer’s primality test [18].

Return True iff *n* is prime.

The method proves the primality of *n* by existence of a primitive root.

divisors is a sequence (list, tuple, etc.) of prime divisors of $n - 1$.

3.11.9 **full_euler** – Brillhart & Selfridge’s test

full_euler(*n: integer, divisors: sequence*) $\rightarrow$ *True/False*

Brillhart & Selfridge’s primality test [12].

Return True iff n is prime.

The method proves the primality of n by the equality $\varphi(n) = n - 1$, where φ denotes the Euler totient (see **euler**). It requires a sequence of all prime divisors of $n - 1$.

`divisors` is a sequence (list, tuple, etc.) of prime divisors of $n - 1$.

3.11.10 `apr` – Jacobi sum test

`apr(n: integer) → True/False`

APR (Adleman-Pomerance-Rumery) primality test or the Jacobi sum test.

Assuming n has no prime factors less than 32. Assuming n is spsp (strong pseudo-prime) for several bases.

3.11.11 `aks` – Cyclotomic Congruence test

`aks(n: integer) → True/False`

AKS (Agrawal-Kayal-Saxena) primality test or the cyclotomic congruence test.

Return True iff n is prime.

The algorithm determines whether a number n is prime or composite within polynomial time. For large number n , you can use `apr` and any other test in practical use.

3.11.12 `primeq` – primality test automatically

`primeq(n: integer) → True/False`

A convenient function for primality test.

It uses one of **`trialDivision`**, **`smallSpsp`** or **`apr`** depending on the size of n .

3.11.13 `prime` – n -th prime number

`prime(n: integer) → integer`

Return the n -th prime number.

3.11.14 nextPrime – generate next prime

`nextPrime(n: integer) → integer`

Return the smallest prime bigger than the given integer *n*.

3.11.15 randPrime – generate random prime

`randPrime(n: integer) → integer`

Return a random *n*-digits prime.

3.11.16 eratosthenes – primes *list* by Eratosthenes sieve

`eratosthenes(N: integer) → P integer list`

By the most naive refined Eratosthenes sieve, create a table of prime numbers upto a given bound. Simple and fast. *N* should be a positive integer. *P* is the *list* of prime numbers *p*, $2 \leq p \leq N$ in increasing order.

3.11.17 generator – generate primes

`generator() → generator`

Generate primes from 2 to ∞ (as *generator*).

3.11.18 generator_eratosthenes_ – generate primes by the most naive Eratosthenes sieve

`generator_eratosthenes_(N: integer) → generator`

generate primes *p*, $2 \leq p \leq N$ by the method in **eratosthenes**. *N* > 0.

3.11.19 generator_eratosthenes – generate primes using Eratosthenes sieve

`generator_eratosthenes(n: integer) → generator`

Generate primes up to *n* using Eratosthenes sieve.

3.11.20 primonial – product of primes

primonial(p: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the product

$$\prod_{q \in \mathbb{P}_{\leq p}} q = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots p .$$

3.11.21 primitive_root – primitive root

primitive_root(p: *integer*) → *integer*

Return a primitive root modulo p.

p must be an odd prime.

Completely same function is defined as **residue.primitive_root**. So this one will be removed in future.

3.11.22 Lucas_chain – Lucas sequence

Lucas_chain(n: *integer*, f: *function*, g: *function*, x_0: *integer*, x_1: *integer*)
→ (*integer*, *integer*)

Return the value of (x_n, x_{n+1}) for the sequence $\{x_i\}$ defined as:

$$\begin{aligned} x_{2i} &= f(x_i) \\ x_{2i+1} &= g(x_i, x_{i+1}) , \end{aligned}$$

where the initial values **x_0**, **x_1**.

f is the function which can be input as 1-ary integer. g is the function which can be input as 2-ary integer.

3.11.23 LucasLehmer – test for Mersenne prime

LucasLehmer(n: *integer*) → (*integer*, *True/False*)

Test for Mersenne number $b = 2^n - 1$ to be prime or not.

Input `n` should be an odd prime.

Output `(b, s)`, where `s` is *True* or *False* respectively if `b` is prime or composite.

Examples

```
>>> prime.primeq(131)
True
>>> prime.primeq(133)
False
>>> g = prime.generator()
>>> g.next()
2
>>> g.next()
3
>>> prime.prime(10)
29
>>> prime.nextPrime(100)
101
```

3.12 prime_decomp – prime decomposition

3.12.1 prime_decomp – prime decomposition

prime_decomp(*p*: *Integer*, *polynomial*: *list*) → *list*

Return prime decomposition of the ideal (p) over the number field $\mathbf{Q}[x]/(\text{polynomial})$.

p should be a (rational) prime. *polynomial* should be a list of integers which defines a monic irreducible polynomial.

This method returns a list of (P_k, e_k, f_k) ,

where P_k is an instance of **Ideal_with_generator** expresses a prime ideal which divides (p) , e_k is the ramification index of P_k , f_k is the residue degree of P_k .

Examples

```
>>> for fact in prime_decomp.prime_decomp(3,[1,9,0,1]):
...     print(fact)
...
(Ideal_with_generator([BasicAlgNumber([[3, 0, 0], 1], [1, 9, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNum
ber([[7, 20, 4], 3], [1, 9, 0, 1]])], 1, 1)
(Ideal_with_generator([BasicAlgNumber([[3, 0, 0], 1], [1, 9, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNum
ber([[10, 20, 4], 3], [1, 9, 0, 1]])], 2, 1)
```

3.13 residue – Primitive Roots and Power Residues

3.13.1 primRootDef – the primitive roots of a prime

primRootDef(*p*: integer) → *R*: integer list

For a prime $p > 2$, get the increasing *list* *R* of all primitive roots r , $1 < r < p$. Compute powers of each r faithfully following the definition.

3.13.2 primitive_root – the least positive primitive root of a prime

primitive_root(*p*: integer) → *r*: integer

For an odd prime p , find the least positive primitive root r , $1 < r < p$. The method uses the prime factorization of $p - 1$. (This function is completely equal to **prime.primitive_root** which will be removed in future.)

3.13.3 primRootTakagi – a primitive root of a prime

primRootTakagi(*p*: integer, *a*: integer=2) → *r*: integer

For an odd prime p , from a , construct one primitive root r , $1 < r < p$. The method is in [20] "Takagi, Elementary Number Theory", § 11.

3.13.4 primitiveRoots – primes and their primitive roots

primitiveRoots(*N*: integer=1000) → *P*: tuple list

For an *integer* N , compute the *list* *P* of *tuples* (p, r) in increasing order of p with any odd prime $p \leq N$ and the least positive primitive root r of p . The method is by **eratosthenes** and **primRootDef**, so no preparation is necessary.

3.13.5 primitiveRoots2 – primes p and their primitive roots by factoring $p - 1$

primitiveRoots2(*N*: integer=1000) → *P*: tuple list

Same computation as **primitiveRoots**. But, this uses the prime factorization of $p - 1$ similar to **primitive_root**.

3.13.6 primitiveRootPW_ – half of primitive root powers

primitiveRootPW_(p: *integer*, r: *integer*) → PW_: *integer list*

Compute the *integer list* $PW_ = [r^{**I\%p} \text{ for } I \text{ in range}((p-1)\gg 1)]$ for a given primitive root r of an odd prime p . This is the half but the essential part of the powers $r^{**I\%p}$ of r , and is sufficient to keep it as stored data table.

3.13.7 primitiveRootPW – primitive root powers

primitiveRootPW(p: *integer*, r: *integer*, PW_: *integer list*)
→ PW: *integer list*

Create the full *integer list* $PW = [r^{**I\%p} \text{ for } I \text{ in range}(p-1)]$ of powers from $PW_$ which is obtained by **primitiveRootPW_** for a given primitive root r of an odd prime p . This function is applied when we use stored data.

3.13.8 primitiveRoot0PW – primitive root powers directly

primitiveRoot0PW(p: *integer*, r: *integer*) → PW: *integer list*

Compute the full *integer list* $PW = [r^{**I\%p} \text{ for } I \text{ in range}(p-1)]$ of powers directly from a given primitive root r of an odd prime p without stored data.

3.13.9 primitiveRootIX – primitive root index table

primitiveRootIX(p: *integer*, r: *integer*, PW: *integer list*)
→ (IX: *integer list*, Ind: *function*, Pow: *function*)

Let r be a primitive root of an odd prime p . For $N \text{ in range}(1, p)$ and $I \text{ in range}(p-1)$, we define

$$\text{Ind}(N)=I \iff \text{Pow}(I)=N \iff N=r^{**I\%p}.$$

Put $PW=[r^{**I\%p} \text{ for } I \text{ in range}(p-1)]$ and $IX=[\text{Ind}(N) \text{ for } N \text{ in range}(1, p)]$. On the other hand, introduced IX , Pow , Ind are possible to be written in terms of PW (for example $IX[PW[I]-1]=I$, $\text{Pow}(I)=PW[I]$, $\text{Ind}(N)=IX[N-1]$). So they are evaluated without calculation if PW is numerically given. The *integer list* IX is so called **index table**.

3.13.10 primitiveRootGet – primitive root data

primitiveRootGet (ℓ : *integer*, u : *integer* = 0)
 $\rightarrow$ PR: *integer tuple* / *integer tuple list*

Let r generally denote the least positive primitive root of an arbitrary odd prime p . We refer database table in the file **DATADIR**/primitiveRoots.csv. Arguments are assumed to satisfy the following conditions:

$$u = 0 < \ell \leq 999983 \quad \text{or} \quad 0 < \ell \leq u \leq 1000000.$$

If $u = 0$, then *integer tuple* PR=(p, r) is returned with the least prime $p \geq \ell$. If $u \neq 0$, then *integer tuple list* PR=[(p, r) for prime p such as $\ell \leq p \leq u$] is returned. Upper bounds 1000000 and 999983 depend on the database size.

3.13.11 primitiveRootPWGet – primitive root powers data

primitiveRootPWGet (ℓ : *integer*, u : *integer* = 0)
 $\rightarrow$ PRPW: *tuple* / *tuple list*

Let r generally denote the least positive primitive root of an arbitrary odd prime p and let *integer list* PW = [$r^{**I\%p}$ for I in range($p - 1$)] be the power table in **primitiveRoot0PW**. We are able to refer database table in the file **DATADIR**/primitiveRootPW_.csv. Arguments are assumed to satisfy the following conditions:

$$u = 0 < \ell \leq 1999 \quad \text{or} \quad 0 < \ell \leq u \leq 2000.$$

If $u = 0$, then a *tuple* PRPW = (p, r, PW) is returned with the least prime $p \geq \ell$. If $u \neq 0$, then a *tuple list* PRPW=[(p, r, PW) for prime p such as $\ell \leq p \leq u$] is returned. Upper bounds 2000 and 1999 are depending on the database size.

3.14 quad – Imaginary Quadratic Field

- Classes
 - **ReducedQuadraticForm**
 - **ClassGroup**
- Functions
 - **class_formula**
 - **class_number**
 - **class_group**
 - **class_number_bsgs**
 - **class_group_bsgs**

3.14.1 ReducedQuadraticForm – Reduced Quadratic Form Class

Initialize (Constructor)

ReducedQuadraticForm(f: list, unit: list) → *ReducedQuadraticForm*

Create ReducedQuadraticForm object.

f, unit must be list of 3 integers [a, b, c], representing a quadratic form $ax^2 + bxy + cy^2$. unit represents the unit form.

Operations

operator	explanation
M * N	Return the composition form of M and N.
M ** a	Return the a -th powering of M.
M / N	Division of form.
M == N	Return whether M and N are equal or not.
M != N	Return whether M and N are unequal or not.

Methods

3.14.1.1 inverse

`inverse(self)` $\rightarrow$ *ReducedQuadraticForm*

Return the inverse of `self`.

3.14.1.2 disc

`disc(self)` $\rightarrow$ *ReducedQuadraticForm*

Return the discriminant of `self`.

3.14.2 ClassGroup – Class Group Class

Initialize (Constructor)

`ClassGroup(disc: integer, cl: integer, element: integer=None)`
 $\rightarrow$ *ClassGroup*

Create ClassGroup object.

Methods

3.14.3 class_formula

class_formula(*d*: *integer*, uprbd: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the approximation of class number h with discriminant d using class formula.

$$\text{class formula } h = \frac{\sqrt{|d|}}{\pi} \prod_p \left(1 - \left(\frac{d}{p} \right) \frac{1}{p} \right)^{-1}.$$

Input number d must be int or **Integer**.

3.14.4 class_number

class_number(*d*: *integer*, limit_of_d: *integer*=1000000000)
→ *integer*

Return the class number with the discriminant d by counting reduced forms.

d is not only fundamental discriminant.

Input number d must be int or **Integer**.

3.14.5 class_group

class_group(*d*: *integer*, limit_of_d: *integer*=1000000000)
→ *integer*

Return the class number and the class group with the discriminant d by counting reduced forms.

d is not only fundamental discriminant.

Input number d must be int or **Integer**.

3.14.6 class_number_bsgs

class_number_bsgs(*d*: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the class number with the discriminant d using Baby-step Giant-step algorithm.

d is not only fundamental discriminant.

Input number d must be int or **Integer**.

3.14.7 class_group_bsgs

```
class_group_bsgs(d: integer, cl: integer, qin: list)
    → integer
```

Return the construction of the class group of order p^{exp} with the discriminant $disc$, where $qin = [p, exp]$.

Input number d , cl must be int or **Integer**.

Examples

```
>>> quad.class_formula(-1200, 100000)
12
>>> quad.class_number(-1200)
12
>>> quad.class_group(-1200)
(12, [ReducedQuadraticForm(1, 0, 300), ReducedQuadraticForm(3, 0, 100),
ReducedQuadraticForm(4, 0, 75), ReducedQuadraticForm(12, 0, 25),
ReducedQuadraticForm(7, 2, 43), ReducedQuadraticForm(7, -2, 43),
ReducedQuadraticForm(16, 4, 19), ReducedQuadraticForm(16, -4, 19),
ReducedQuadraticForm(13, 10, 25), ReducedQuadraticForm(13, -10, 25),
ReducedQuadraticForm(16, 12, 21), ReducedQuadraticForm(16, -12, 21)])
>>> quad.class_number_bsgs(-1200)
12
>>> quad.class_group_bsgs(-1200, 12, [3, 1])
([ReducedQuadraticForm(16, -12, 21)], [[3]])
>>> quad.class_group_bsgs(-1200, 12, [2, 2])
([ReducedQuadraticForm(12, 0, 25), ReducedQuadraticForm(4, 0, 75)],
[[2], [2, 0]])
```

3.15 round2 – the round 2 method

- **Classes**
 - **ModuleWithDenominator**
- **Functions**
 - **round2**
 - **Dedekind**

The round 2 method is for obtaining the maximal order of a number field from an order generated by a root of a defining polynomial of the field.

This implementation of the method is based on [13](Algorithm 6.1.8) and [17](Chapter 3).

3.15.1 ModuleWithDenominator – bases of $\mathbb{Z}$ -module with denominator.

Initialize (Constructor)

ModuleWithDenominator(basis: *list*, denominator: *integer*, **hints: *dict*)

→ *ModuleWithDenominator*

This class represents bases of $\mathbb{Z}$ -module with denominator. It is not a general purpose $\mathbb{Z}$ -module, you are warned. **basis** is a list of integer sequences.

denominator is a common denominator of all bases.

† Optionally you can supply keyword argument **dimension** if you would like to postpone the initialization of **basis**.

Operations

operator	explanation
A + B	sum of two modules
a * B	scalar multiplication
B / d	divide by an integer

Methods

3.15.1.1 `get_rationals` – get the bases as a list of rationals

`get_rationals(self) → list`

Return a list of lists of rational numbers, which is bases divided by denominator.

3.15.1.2 `get_polynomials` – get the bases as a list of polynomials

`get_polynomials(self) → list`

Return a list of rational polynomials, which is made from bases divided by denominator.

3.15.1.3 `determinant` – determinant of the bases

`determinant(self) → list`

Return determinant of the bases (bases ought to be of full rank and in Hermite normal form).

3.15.2 round2(function)

round2(minpoly_coeff: *list*) → (*list*, *integer*)

Return integral basis of the ring of integers of a field with its discriminant. The field is given by a list of integers, which is a polynomial of generating element θ . The polynomial ought to be monic, in other word, the generating element ought to be an algebraic integer.

The integral basis will be given as a list of rational vectors with respect to θ .

3.15.3 Dedekind(function)

Dedekind(minpoly_coeff: *list*, p: *integer*, e: *integer*)
→ (*bool*, *ModuleWithDenominator*)

This is the Dedekind criterion.

minpoly_coeff is an integer list of the minimal polynomial of θ .

p**e divides the discriminant of the minimal.

The first element of the returned tuple is whether the computation about p is finished or not.

3.16 sequence – mathematical sequences

3.16.1 generator_fibonacci – generator of Fibonacci numbers

generator_fibonacci(n: *Integer*=None) → *generator*

Generate Fibonacci number up to *n*-th term if *n* is assigned else infinity.

3.16.2 fibonacci – Fibonacci numbers

fibonacci(n: *Integer*) → *Integer*

For a non-negative *Integer* *n*, return the *n*-th term of the Fibonacci number.

3.17 squarefree – Squarefreeness tests

There are two method groups. A function in one group raises **Undetermined** when it cannot determine squarefreeness. A function in another group returns **None** in such cases. The latter group of functions have “_ternary” suffix on their names. We refer a set $\{\text{True}, \text{False}, \text{None}\}$ as *ternary*.

The parameter type *integer* means either *int* or **Integer**.

This module provides an exception class.

Undetermined : Report undetermined state of calculation. The exception will be raised by **lenstra** or **trivial_test**.

3.17.1 Definition

We define squarefreeness as:

n is squarefree $\iff$ there is no prime p whose square divides n .

Examples:

- 0 is non-squarefree because any square of prime can divide 0.
- 1 is squarefree because there is no prime dividing 1.
- 2, 3, 5, and any other primes are squarefree.
- 4, 8, 9, 12, 16 are non-squarefree composites.
- 6, 10, 14, 15, 21 are squarefree composites.

3.17.2 lenstra – Lenstra’s condition

lenstra(*n*: *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *bool*

If return value is True, n is squarefree. Otherwise, the squarefreeness is still unknown and **Undetermined** is raised. The algorithm is based on [19].

†The condition is so strong that it seems n has to be a prime or a Carmichael number to satisfy it.

Input parameter n ought to be an odd **integer**.

3.17.3 trial_division – trial division

trial_division(*n*: *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *bool*

Check whether n is squarefree or not.

The method is a kind of trial division and inefficient for large numbers.

Input parameter `n` ought to be an **integer**.

3.17.4 `trivial_test` – trivial tests

`trivial_test(n: integer) → bool`

Check whether `n` is squarefree or not. If the squarefreeness is still unknown, then **Undetermined** is raised.

This method do anything but factorization including Lenstra's method.

Input parameter `n` ought to be an odd **integer**.

3.17.5 `viafactor` – via factorization

`viafactor(n: integer) → bool`

Check whether `n` is squarefree or not.

It is obvious that if one knows the prime factorization of the number, he/she can tell whether the number is squarefree or not.

Input parameter `n` ought to be an **integer**.

3.17.6 `viadecomposition` – via partial factorization

`viadecomposition(n: integer) → bool`

Test the squarefreeness of `n`. The return value is either one of **True** or **False**; **None** never be returned.

The method uses partial factorization into squarefree parts, if such partial factorization is possible. In other cases, It completely factor `n` by trial division.

Input parameter `n` ought to be an **integer**.

3.17.7 `lenstra_ternary` – Lenstra's condition, ternary version

`lenstra_ternary(n: integer) → ternary`

Test the squarefreeness of `n`. The return value is one of the ternary logical constants. If return value is **True**, `n` is squarefree. Otherwise, the squarefreeness is still unknown and **None** is returned.

†The condition is so strong that it seems n has to be a prime or a Carmichael number to satisfy it.

This is a ternary version of **lenstra**.

Input parameter n ought to be an odd **integer**.

3.17.8 **trivial_test_ternary** – trivial tests, ternary version

trivial_test_ternary(n : *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *ternary*

Test the squarefreeness of n . The return value is one of the ternary logical constants.

The method uses a series of trivial tests including **lenstra_ternary**.

This is a ternary version of **trivial_test**.

Input parameter n ought to be an **integer**.

3.17.9 **trial_division_ternary** – trial division, ternary version

trial_division_ternary(n : *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *ternary*

Test the squarefreeness of n . The return value is either one of **True** or **False**; **None** never be returned.

The method is a kind of trial division.

This is a ternary version of **trial_division**.

Input parameter n ought to be an **integer**.

3.17.10 **viafactor_ternary** – via factorization, ternary version

viafactor_ternary(n : *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *ternary*

Just for symmetry, this function is defined as an alias of **viafactor**.

Input parameter n ought to be an **integer**.

Chapter 4

Classes

4.1 `algfield` – Algebraic Number Field

- **Classes**
 - `NumberField`
 - `BasicAlgNumber`
 - `MatAlgNumber`
- **Functions**
 - `changetype`
 - `disc`
 - `fppoly`
 - `qpoly`
 - `zpoly`

4.1.1 `NumberField` – number field

Initialize (Constructor)

`NumberField( f: list, precompute: bool=False ) → NumberField`

Create `NumberField` object.

This field defined by the polynomial `f`.
The class inherits `Field`.

`f`, which expresses coefficients of a polynomial, must be a list of integers. `f` should be written in ascending order. `f` must be monic irreducible over rational

field.

If `precompute` is True, all solutions of `f` (by `getConj`), the discriminant of `f` (by `disc`), the signature (by `signature`) and the field discriminant of the basis of the integer ring (by `integer_ring`) are precomputed.

Attributes

degree : The (absolute) extension degree of the number field.

polynomial : The defining polynomial of the number field.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>K * F</code>	Return the composite field of K and F.
<code>K == F</code>	Check whether the equality of K and F.

Examples

```
>>> K = algfield.NumberField([-2, 0, 1])
>>> L = algfield.NumberField([-3, 0, 1])
>>> print(K, L)
NumberField([-2, 0, 1]) NumberField([-3, 0, 1])
>>> print(K * L)
NumberField([1, 0, -10, 0, 1])
```

Methods

4.1.1.1 `getConj` – roots of polynomial

`getConj(self)` → *list*

Return all (approximate) roots of the `self.polynomial`.

The output is a list of (approximate) complex number.

4.1.1.2 `disc` – polynomial discriminant

`disc(self)` → *integer*

Return the (polynomial) discriminant of the `self.polynomial`.

†The output is not discriminant of the number field itself.

4.1.1.3 `integer_ring` – integer ring

`integer_ring(self)` → **FieldSquareMatrix**

Return a basis of the ring of integers of `self`.

†The function uses **round2**.

4.1.1.4 `field_discriminant` – discriminant

`field_discriminant(self)` → **Rational**

Return the field discriminant of `self`.

†The function uses **round2**.

4.1.1.5 `basis` – standard basis

`basis(self, j: integer)` → **BasicAlgNumber**

Return the j -th basis (over the rational field) of `self`.

Let θ be a solution of `self.polynomial`. Then θ^j is a part of basis of `self`, so

the method returns them. This basis is called “standard basis” or “power basis”.

4.1.1.6 `signature` – signature

`signature(self)` $\rightarrow$ *list*

Return the signature of `self`.

†The method uses Strum’s algorithm.

4.1.1.7 `POLRED` – polynomial reduction

`POLRED(self)` $\rightarrow$ *list*

Return some polynomials defining subfields of `self`.

†“POLRED” means “polynomial reduction”. That is, it finds polynomials whose coefficients are not so large.

4.1.1.8 `isIntBasis` – check integral basis

`isIntBasis(self)` $\rightarrow$ *bool*

Check whether power basis of `self` is also an integral basis of the field.

4.1.1.9 `isGaloisField` – check Galois field

`isGaloisField(self)` $\rightarrow$ *bool*

Check whether the extension `self` over the rational field is Galois.

†As it stands, it only checks the signature.

4.1.1.10 `isFieldElement` – check field element

`isFieldElement(self, A: BasicAlgNumber/MatAlgNumber)`
 $\rightarrow$ *bool*

Check whether `A` is an element of the field `self`.

4.1.1.11 `getCharacteristic` – characteristic

`getCharacteristic(self)` → *integer*

Return the characteristic of `self`.

It returns always zero. The method is only for ensuring consistency.

4.1.1.12 `createElement` – create an element

`createElement(self, seed: list)` → *BasicAlgNumber/MatAlgNumber*

Return an element of `self` with `seed`.

`seed` determines the class of returned element.

For example, if `seed` forms as $[[e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n], d]$, then it calls **BasicAlgNumber**.

Examples

```
>>> K = algfield.NumberField([3, 0, 1])
>>> K.getConj()
[-1.7320508075688774j, 1.7320508075688772j]
>>> K.disc()
-12
>>> print(K.integer_ring())
1/1 1/2
0/1 1/2
>>> K.field_discriminant()
Rational(-3, 1)
>>> K.basis(0), K.basis(1)
BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 1], [3, 0, 1]) BasicAlgNumber([[0, 1], 1], [3, 0, 1])
>>> K.signature()
(0, 1)
>>> K.POLRED()
[IntegerPolynomial([(0, 4), (1, -2), (2, 1)], IntegerRing()),
IntegerPolynomial([(0, -1), (1, 1)], IntegerRing())]
>>> K.isIntBasis()
False
```


4.1.2 BasicAlgNumber – Algebraic Number Class by standard basis

Initialize (Constructor)

```
BasicAlgNumber( valuelist: list, polynomial: list, precompute:
bool=False )
    → BasicAlgNumber
```

Create an algebraic number with standard (power) basis.

`valuelist` = $[[e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n], d]$ means $\frac{1}{d}(e_1 + e_2\theta + e_3\theta^2 + \dots + e_n\theta^{n-1})$, where θ is a solution of the polynomial `polynomial`. Note that $\langle \theta^i \rangle$ is a (standard) basis of the field defining by `polynomial` over the rational field.

e_i, d must be integers. Also, `polynomial` should be list of integers. If `precompute` is True, all solutions of `polynomial` (by `getConj`), approximation values of all conjugates of `self` (by `getApprox`) and a polynomial which is a solution of `self` (by `getCharPoly`) are precomputed.

Attributes

value : The list of numerators (the integer part) and the denominator of `self`.

coeff : The coefficients of numerators (the integer part) of `self`.

denom : The denominator of the algebraic number for standard basis.

degree : The degree of extension of the field over the rational field.

polynomial : The defining polynomial of the field.

field : The number field in which `self` is.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>a + b</code>	Return the sum of <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> .
<code>a - b</code>	Return the subtraction of <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> .
<code>- a</code>	Return the negation of <code>a</code> .
<code>a * b</code>	Return the product of <code>a</code> and <code>b</code> .
<code>a ** k</code>	Return the k-th power of <code>a</code> .
<code>a / b</code>	Return the quotient of <code>a</code> by <code>b</code> .

Examples

```
>>> a = algfield.BasicAlgNumber([[1, 1], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> b = algfield.BasicAlgNumber([[-1, 2], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print(a + b)
BasicAlgNumber([[0, 3], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print(a * b)
BasicAlgNumber([[3, 1], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print(a ** 3)
BasicAlgNumber([[7, 5], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> a // b
BasicAlgNumber([[5, 3], 7], [-2, 0, 1])
```

Methods

4.1.2.1 `inverse` – `inverse`

`inverse(self) → BasicAlgNumber`

Return the inverse of `self`.

4.1.2.2 `getConj` – roots of polynomial

`getConj(self) → list`

Return all (approximate) roots of `self.polynomial`.

4.1.2.3 `getApprox` – approximate conjugates

`getApprox(self) → list`

Return all (approximate) conjugates of `self`.

4.1.2.4 `getCharPoly` – characteristic polynomial

`getCharPoly(self) → list`

Return the characteristic polynomial of `self`.

†`self` is a solution of the characteristic polynomial.

The output is a list of integers.

4.1.2.5 `getRing` – the field

`getRing(self) → NumberField`

Return the field which `self` belongs to.

4.1.2.6 `trace` – `trace`

`trace(self) → Rational`

Return the trace of `self` in the `self.field` over the rational field.

4.1.2.7 `norm` – `norm`

`norm(self)` → *Rational*

Return the norm of `self` in the `self.field` over the rational field.

4.1.2.8 `isAlgInteger` – check (algebraic) integer

`isAlgInteger(self)` → *bool*

Check whether `self` is an (algebraic) integer or not.

4.1.2.9 `ch_matrix` – obtain `MatAlgNumber` object

`ch_matrix(self)` → *MatAlgNumber*

Return *MatAlgNumber* object corresponding to `self`.

Examples

```
>>> a = algfield.BasicAlgNumber([[1, 1], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> a.inverse()
BasicAlgNumber([[-1, 1], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> a.getConj()
[(1.4142135623730951+0j), (-1.4142135623730951+0j)]
>>> a.getApprox()
[(2.4142135623730949+0j), (-0.41421356237309515+0j)]
>>> a.getCharPoly()
[-1, -2, 1]
>>> a.getRing()
NumberField([-2, 0, 1])
>>> a.trace(), a.norm()
2 -1
>>> a.isAlgInteger()
True
>>> a.ch_matrix()
MatAlgNumber([1, 1]+[2, 1], [-2, 0, 1])
```

4.1.3 MatAlgNumber – Algebraic Number Class by matrix representation

Initialize (Constructor)

```
MatAlgNumber( coefficient: list, polynomial: list )
    → MatAlgNumber
```

Create an algebraic number represented by a matrix.

“matrix representation” means the matrix A over the rational field such that $(e_1 + e_2\theta + e_3\theta^2 + \dots + e_n\theta^{n-1})(1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1})^T = A(1, \theta, \dots, \theta^{n-1})^T$, where t expresses transpose operation.

coefficient = $[e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n]$ means $e_1 + e_2\theta + e_3\theta^2 + \dots + e_n\theta^{n-1}$, where θ is a solution of the polynomial **polynomial**. Note that $\langle \theta^i \rangle$ is a (standard) basis of the field defining by **polynomial** over the rational field. **coefficient** must be a list of (not only integers) rational numbers. **polynomial** must be a list of integers.

Attributes

coeff : The coefficients of the algebraic number for standard basis.

degree : The degree of extension of the field over the rational field.

matrix : The representation matrix of the algebraic number.

polynomial : The defining polynomial of the field.

field : The number field in which **self** is.

Operations

operator	explanation
a + b	Return the sum of a and b .
a - b	Return the subtraction of a and b .
- a	Return the negation of a .
a * b	Return the product of a and b .
a ** k	Return the k-th power of a .
a / b	Return the quotient of a by b .

Examples

```
>>> a = algfield.MatAlgNumber([1, 2], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> b = algfield.MatAlgNumber([-2, 3], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print(a + b)
MatAlgNumber([-1, 5]+[10, -1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print(a * b)
MatAlgNumber([10, -1]+[-2, 10], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print(a ** 3)
MatAlgNumber([25, 22]+[44, 25], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> print(a / b)
MatAlgNumber([Rational(1, 1), Rational(1, 2)]+
[Rational(1, 1), Rational(1, 1)], [-2, 0, 1])
```

Methods

4.1.3.1 inverse – inverse

`inverse(self)` → *MatAlgNumber*

Return the inverse of `self`.

4.1.3.2 getRing – the field

`getRing(self)` → *NumberField*

Return the field which `self` belongs to.

4.1.3.3 trace – trace

`trace(self)` → *Rational*

Return the trace of `self` in the `self.field` over the rational field.

4.1.3.4 norm – norm

`norm(self)` → *Rational*

Return the norm of `self` in the `self.field` over the rational field.

4.1.3.5 ch_basic – obtain BasicAlgNumber object

`ch_basic(self)` → *BasicAlgNumber*

Return **BasicAlgNumber** object corresponding to `self`.

Examples

```
>>> a = algfield.MatAlgNumber([1, -1, 1], [-3, 1, 2, 1])
>>> a.inverse()
MatAlgNumber([Rational(2, 3), Rational(4, 9), Rational(1, 9)]+
[Rational(1, 3), Rational(5, 9), Rational(2, 9)]+
[Rational(2, 3), Rational(1, 9), Rational(1, 9)], [-3, 1, 2, 1])
>>> a.trace()
Rational(7, 1)
```

```
>>> a.norm()
Rational(27, 1)
>>> a.getRing()
NumberField([-3, 1, 2, 1])
>>> a.ch_basic()
BasicAlgNumber([[1, -1, 1], 1], [-3, 1, 2, 1])
```


4.1.4 `changetype(function)` – obtain `BasicAlgNumber` object

```
changetype( a: integer, polynomial: list=[0, 1] ) → BasicAlgNumber
```

```
changetype( a: Rational, polynomial: list=[0, 1] ) → BasicAlgNumber
```

```
changetype( polynomial: list ) → BasicAlgNumber
```

Return a `BasicAlgNumber` object corresponding to `a`.

If `a` is an integer or an instance of `Rational`, the function returns `BasicAlgNumber` object whose field is defined by `polynomial`. If `a` is a list, the function returns `BasicAlgNumber` corresponding to a solution of `a`, considering `a` as the polynomial.

The input parameter `a` must be an integer, `Rational` or a list of integers.

4.1.5 `disc(function)` – discriminant

```
disc(A: list) → Rational
```

Return the discriminant of a_i , where $A = [a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n]$.

a_i must be an instance of `BasicAlgNumber` or `MatAlgNumber` defined over a same number field.

4.1.6 `fppoly(function)` – polynomial over finite prime field

```
fppoly(coeffs: list, p: integer) → FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial
```

Return the polynomial whose coefficients `coeffs` are defined over the prime field $\mathbb{Z}_p$.

`coeffs` should be a list of integers or of instances of `FinitePrimeFieldElement`.

4.1.7 `qpoly(function)` – polynomial over rational field

```
qpoly(coeffs: list) → FieldPolynomial
```

Return the polynomial whose coefficients `coeffs` are defined over the rational

field.

`coeffs` must be a list of integers or instances of **Rational**.

4.1.8 `zpoly(function)` – polynomial over integer ring

`zpoly(coeffs: list) → IntegerPolynomial`

Return the polynomial whose coefficients `coeffs` are defined over the (rational) integer ring.

`coeffs` must be a list of integers.

Examples

```
>>> a = algfield.changetype(3, [-2, 0, 1])
>>> b = algfield.BasicAlgNumber([[1, 2], 1], [-2, 0, 1])
>>> A = [a, b]
>>> algfield.disc(A)
288
```

4.2 elliptic – elliptic class object

- **Classes**
 - **ECGeneric**
 - **ECoverQ**
 - **ECoverGF**
- **Functions**
 - **EC**

This module using following type:

weierstrassform :

weierstrassform is a list $(a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_6)$ or (a_4, a_6) , it represents E : $y^2 + a_1xy + a_3y = x^3 + a_2x^2 + a_4x + a_6$ or $E : y^2 = x^3 + a_4x + a_6$, respectively.

infpoint :

infpoint is the list [0], which represents infinite point on the elliptic curve.

point :

point is two-dimensional coordinate list $[x, y]$ or **infpoint**.

4.2.1 †ECGeneric – generic elliptic curve class

Initialize (Constructor)

```
ECGeneric( coefficient: weierstrassform, basefield: Field=None )  
→ ECGeneric
```

Create an elliptic curve object.

The class is for the definition of elliptic curves over general fields. Instead of using this class directly, we recommend that you call **EC**.

†The class precomputes the following values.

- shorter form: $y^2 = b_2x^3 + b_4x^2 + b_6x + b_8$
- shortest form: $y^2 = x^3 + c_4x + c_6$
- discriminant
- j-invariant

All elements of **coefficient** must be in **basefield**.

See **weierstrassform** for more information about **coefficient**. If discriminant of **self** equals 0, it raises `ValueError`.

Attributes

basefield :

It expresses the field which each coordinate of all points in **self** is on.
(This means not only **self** is defined over **basefield**.)

ch :

It expresses the characteristic of **basefield**.

infpoint :

It expresses infinity point (i.e. $[0]$).

a1, a2, a3, a4, a6 :

It expresses the coefficients **a1, a2, a3, a4, a6**.

b2, b4, b6, b8 :

It expresses the coefficients **b2, b4, b6, b8**.

c4, c6 :

It expresses the coefficients **c4, c6**.

disc :

It expresses the discriminant of **self**.

j :
It expresses the j-invariant of **self**.

coefficient :
It expresses the **weierstrassform** of **self**.

Methods

4.2.1.1 simple – simplify the curve coefficient

simple(self) → ECGeneric

Return elliptic curve corresponding to the short Weierstrass form of **self** by changing the coordinates.

4.2.1.2 changeCurve – change the curve by coordinate change

changeCurve(self, V: list) → ECGeneric

Return elliptic curve corresponding to the curve obtained by some coordinate change $x = u^2x' + r$, $y = u^3y' + su^2x' + t$.

For $u \neq 0$, the coordinate change gives some curve which is **basefield**-isomorphic to **self**.

V must be a list of the form $[u, r, s, t]$, where u, r, s, t are in **basefield**.

4.2.1.3 changePoint – change coordinate of point on the curve

changePoint(self, P: point, V: list) → point

Return the point corresponding to the point obtained by the coordinate change $x' = (x - r)u^{-2}$, $y' = (y - s(x - r) + t)u^{-3}$.

Note that the inverse coordinate change is $x = u^2x' + r$, $y = u^3y' + su^2x' + t$. See **changeCurve**.

V must be a list of the form $[u, r, s, t]$, where u, r, s, t are in **basefield**. u must be non-zero.

4.2.1.4 coordinateY – Y-coordinate from X-coordinate

coordinateY(self, x: FieldElement) → FieldElement / False

Return Y-coordinate of the point on **self** whose X-coordinate is **x**.

The output would be one Y-coordinate (if a coordinate is found). If such a Y-coordinate does not exist, it returns False.

4.2.1.5 whetherOn – Check point is on curve

```
whetherOn(self, P: point) → bool
```

Check whether the point P is on `self` or not.

4.2.1.6 add – Point addition on the curve

```
add(self, P: point, Q: point) → point
```

Return the sum of the point P and Q on `self`.

4.2.1.7 sub – Point subtraction on the curve

```
sub(self, P: point, Q: point) → point
```

Return the subtraction of the point P from Q on `self`.

4.2.1.8 mul – Scalar point multiplication on the curve

```
mul(self, k: integer, P: point) → point
```

Return the scalar multiplication of the point P by a scalar k on `self`.

4.2.1.9 divPoly – division polynomial

```
divPoly(self, m: integer=None) → FieldPolynomial/(f: list, H: integer)
```

Return the division polynomial.

If `m` is odd, this method returns the usual division polynomial. If `m` is even, return the quotient of the usual division polynomial by $2y + a_1x + a_3$.

†If `m` is not specified (i.e. `m=None`), then return `(f, H)`. `H` is the least prime satisfying $\prod_{2 \leq l \leq H, l: \text{prime}} l > 4\sqrt{q}$, where q is the order of `basefield`. `f` is the list of k -division polynomials up to $k \leq H$. These are used for Schoof's algorithm.

4.2.2 ECoverQ – elliptic curve over rational field

The class is for elliptic curves over the rational field $\mathbb{Q}$ (**RationalField** in `nzmath.rational`).

The class is a subclass of **ECGeneric**.

Initialize (Constructor)

ECoverQ(coefficient: **weierstrassform**) $\rightarrow$ **ECoverQ**

Create elliptic curve over the rational field.

All elements of `coefficient` must be integer or **Rational**.
See **weierstrassform** for more information about `coefficient`.

Examples

```
>>> E = elliptic.ECoverQ([rational.Rational(1, 2), 3])
>>> print(E.disc)
-3896/1
>>> print(E.j)
1728/487
```


Methods

4.2.2.1 `point` – obtain random point on curve

`point(self, limit: integer=1000) → point`

Return a random point on `self`.

`limit` expresses the time of trying to choose points. If failed, raise `ValueError`.
†Because it is difficult to search the rational point over the rational field, it might raise error with high frequency.

Examples

```
>>> print(E.changeCurve([1, 2, 3, 4]))
y ** 2 + 6/1 * x * y + 8/1 * y = x ** 3 - 3/1 * x ** 2 - 23/2 * x - 4/1
>>> E.divPoly(3)
FieldPolynomial([(0, Rational(-1, 4)), (1, Rational(36, 1)), (2, Rational(3, 1)
), (4, Rational(3, 1))], RationalField())
```

4.2.3 ECoverGF – elliptic curve over finite field

The class is for elliptic curves over a finite field, denoted by $\mathbb{F}_q$ (**FiniteField** and its subclasses in `nzmath`).

The class is a subclass of **ECGeneric**.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
ECoverGF( coefficient: weierstrassform, basefield: FiniteField )  
→ ECoverGF
```

Create elliptic curve over a finite field.

All elements of `coefficient` must be in `basefield`. `basefield` should be an instance of **FiniteField**.

See **weierstrassform** for more information about `coefficient`.

Examples

```
>>> E = elliptic.ECoverGF([2, 5], finitefield.FinitePrimeField(11))  
>>> print(E.j)  
7 in F_11  
>>> E.whetherOn([8, 4])  
True  
>>> E.add([3, 4], [9, 9])  
[FinitePrimeFieldElement(0, 11), FinitePrimeFieldElement(4, 11)]  
>>> E.mul(5, [9, 9])  
[FinitePrimeFieldElement(0, 11)]
```

Methods

4.2.3.1 `point` – find random point on curve

`point(self)` → *point*

Return a random point on `self`.

This method uses a probabilistic algorithm.

4.2.3.2 `naive` – Frobenius trace by naive method

`naive(self)` → *integer*

Return Frobenius trace t by a naive method.

†The function counts up the Legendre symbols of all rational points on `self`. Frobenius trace of the curve is t such that $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q + 1 - t$, where $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ stands for the number of points on `self` over `self.basefield` $\mathbb{F}_q$.

The characteristic of `self.basefield` must not be 2 nor 3.

4.2.3.3 `Shanks_Mestre` – Frobenius trace by Shanks and Mestre method

`Shanks_Mestre(self)` → *integer*

Return Frobenius trace t by Shanks and Mestre method.

†This uses the method proposed by Shanks and Mestre. †See Algorithm 7.5.3 of [15] for more information about the algorithm. Frobenius trace of the curve is t such that $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q + 1 - t$, where $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ stands for the number of points on `self` over `self.basefield` $\mathbb{F}_q$.

`self.basefield` must be an instance of `FinitePrimeField`.

4.2.3.4 `Schoof` – Frobenius trace by Schoof’s method

`Schoof(self)` → *integer*

Return Frobenius trace t by Schoof’s method.

†This uses the method proposed by Schoof.

Frobenius trace of the curve is t such that $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q + 1 - t$, where $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ stands for the number of points on `self` over `self.basefield` $\mathbb{F}_q$.

4.2.3.5 trace – Frobenius trace

`trace(self, r: integer=None) → integer`

Return Frobenius trace t .

Frobenius trace of the curve is t such that $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q + 1 - t$, where $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ stands for the number of points on `self` over `self.basefield` $\mathbb{F}_q$.

If positive r given, it returns $q^r + 1 - \#E(\mathbb{F}_{q^r})$.

†The method selects algorithms by investigating `self.ch` when `self.basefield` is an instance of `FinitePrimeField`. If `ch` < 1000, the method uses `naive`. If $10^4 < \text{ch} < 10^{30}$, the method uses `Shanks_Mestre`. Otherwise, it uses `Schoof`.

The parameter r must be positive integer.

4.2.3.6 order – order of group of rational points on the curve

`order(self, r: integer=None) → integer`

Return order $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q) = q + 1 - t$.

If positive r given, this computes $\#E(\mathbb{F}_q^r)$ instead.

†On the computation of Frobenius trace t , the method calls `trace`.

The parameter r must be positive integer.

4.2.3.7 pointorder – order of point on the curve

`pointorder(self, P: point, ord_factor: list=None)
→ integer`

Return order of a point P .

†The method uses factorization of `order`.

If `ord_factor` is given, computation of factorizing the order of `self` is omitted and it applies `ord_factor` instead.

4.2.3.8 TatePairing – Tate Pairing

TatePairing(self, m: *integer*, P: **point**, Q: **point**) → **FiniteFieldElement**

Return Tate-Lichtenbaum pairing $\langle P, Q \rangle_m$.

†The method uses Miller’s algorithm.
The image of the Tate pairing is $\mathbb{F}_q^*/\mathbb{F}_q^{*m}$, but the method returns an element of $\mathbb{F}_q$, so the value is not uniquely defined. If uniqueness is needed, use **TatePairing_Extend**.

The point P has to be a m-torsion point (i.e. $mP = [0]$). Also, the number m must divide **order**.

4.2.3.9 TatePairing_Extend – Tate Pairing with final exponentiation

TatePairing_Extend(self, m: *integer*, P: **point**, Q: **point**)
→ **FiniteFieldElement**

Return Tate Pairing with final exponentiation, i.e. $\langle P, Q \rangle_m^{(q-1)/m}$.

†The method calls **TatePairing**.

The point P has to be a m-torsion point (i.e. $mP = [0]$). Also the number m must divide **order**.
The output is in the group generated by m-th root of unity in $\mathbb{F}_q^*$.

4.2.3.10 WeilPairing – Weil Pairing

WeilPairing(self, m: *integer*, P: **point**, Q: **point**) → **FiniteFieldElement**

Return Weil pairing $e_m(P, Q)$.

†The method uses Miller’s algorithm.

The points P and Q has to be a m-torsion point (i.e. $mP = mQ = [0]$). Also, the number m must divide **order**.

The output is in the group generated by m-th root of unity in $\mathbb{F}_q^*$.

4.2.3.11 BSGS – point order by Baby-Step and Giant-Step

BSGS(self, P: **point**) → *integer*

Return order of point P by Baby-Step and Giant-Step method.

†See [21] for more information about the algorithm.

4.2.3.12 DLP_BSGS – solve Discrete Logarithm Problem by Baby-Step and Giant-Step

DLP_BSGS(self, n: *integer*, P: **point**, Q: **point**) → *m*: integer

Return *m* such that $Q = mP$ by Baby-Step and Giant-Step method.

The points P and Q has to be a *n*-torsion point (i.e. $nP = nQ = [0]$). Also, the number *n* must divide **order**.
The output *m* is an integer.

4.2.3.13 structure – structure of group of rational points

structure(self) → *structure*: tuple

Return the group structure of **self**.

The structure of $E(\mathbb{F}_q)$ is represented as $\mathbb{Z}/d\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$. The method uses **WeilPairing**.

The output **structure** is a tuple of positive two integers (*d*, *n*). *d* divides *n*.

4.2.3.14 issupersingular – check supersingular curve

structure(self) → *bool*

Check whether **self** is a supersingular curve or not.

Examples

```
>>> E=nzmath.elliptic.ECoverGF([2, 5], nzmath.finitefield.FinitePrimeField(11))
>>> E.whetherOn([0, 4])
True
>>> print(E.coordinateY(3))
4 in F_11
>>> E.trace()
2
>>> E.order()
```

```
10
>>> E.pointorder([3, 4])
10
>>> E.TatePairing(10, [3, 4], [9, 9])
FinitePrimeFieldElement(3, 11)
>>> E.DLP_BSGS(10, [3, 4], [9, 9])
6
```

4.2.4 EC(function)

```
EC(coefficient: weierstrassform, basefield: Field)  
    → ECGeneric
```

Create an elliptic curve object.

All elements of `coefficient` must be in `basefield`.
`basefield` must be **RationalField** or **FiniteField** or their subclasses. See
also **weierstrassform** for `coefficient`.

4.3 finitefield – Finite Field

- Classes
 - †FiniteField
 - †FiniteFieldElement
 - FinitePrimeField
 - FinitePrimeFieldElement
 - ExtendedField
 - ExtendedFieldElement

4.3.1 †FiniteField – finite field, abstract

Abstract class for finite fields. Do not use the class directly, but use the subclasses **FinitePrimeField** or **ExtendedField**.

The class is a subclass of **Field**.

4.3.2 †FiniteFieldElement – element in finite field, abstract

Abstract class for finite field elements. Do not use the class directly, but use the subclasses **FinitePrimeFieldElement** or **ExtendedFieldElement**.

The class is a subclass of **FieldElement**.

4.3.3 FinitePrimeField – finite prime field

Finite prime field is also known as $\mathbb{F}_p$ or $\text{GF}(p)$. It has prime number cardinality.

The class is a subclass of **FiniteField**.

Initialize (Constructor)

FinitePrimeField(characteristic: *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *FinitePrimeField*

Create a FinitePrimeField instance with the given `characteristic`. `characteristic` must be positive prime integer.

Attributes

zero :

It expresses the additive unit 0. (read only)

one :

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>F==G</code>	equality test.
<code>x in F</code>	membership test.
<code>card(F)</code>	Cardinality of the field.

Methods

4.3.3.1 createElement – create element of finite prime field

`createElement(self, seed: integer) → FinitePrimeFieldElement`

Create **FinitePrimeFieldElement** with `seed`.
`seed` must be int.

4.3.3.2 getCharacteristic – get characteristic

`getCharacteristic(self) → integer`

Return the characteristic of the field.

4.3.3.3 issubring – subring test

`issubring(self, other: Ring) → bool`

Report whether another ring contains the field as subring.

4.3.3.4 issuperring – superring test

`issuperring(self, other: Ring) → bool`

Report whether the field is a superring of another ring.
Since the field is a prime field, it can be a superring of itself only.

4.3.4 FinitePrimeFieldElement – element of finite prime field

The class provides elements of finite prime fields.

It is a subclass of **FiniteFieldElement** and **IntegerResidueClass**.

Initialize (Constructor)

FinitePrimeFieldElement(representative: *integer*, modulus: *integer*)
→ *FinitePrimeFieldElement*

Create element in finite prime field of modulus with residue representative.
modulus must be positive prime integer.

Operations

operator	explanation
a+b	addition.
a-b	subtraction.
a*b	multiplication.
a**n, pow(a,n)	power.
-a	negation.
+a	make a copy.
a==b	equality test.
a!=b	inequality test.
repr(a)	return representation string.
str(a)	return string.

Methods

4.3.4.1 `getRing` – get ring object

`getRing(self)` $\rightarrow$ *FinitePrimeField*

Return an instance of `FinitePrimeField` to which the element belongs.

4.3.4.2 `order` – order of multiplicative group

`order(self)` $\rightarrow$ *integer*

Find and return the order of the element in the multiplicative group of $\mathbb{F}_p$.

4.3.5 ExtendedField – extended field of finite field

ExtendedField is a class for finite field, whose cardinality $q = p^n$ with a prime p and $n > 1$. It is usually called $\mathbb{F}_q$ or $\text{GF}(q)$.

The class is a subclass of **FiniteField**.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
ExtendedField(basefield: FiniteField, modulus: FiniteFieldPolynomial)  
    → ExtendedField
```

Create a field extension `basefield[X]/(modulus(X))`.

FinitePrimeField instance with the given `characteristic`. The `modulus` has to be an irreducible polynomial with coefficients in the `basefield`.

Attributes

zero :

It expresses the additive unit 0. (read only)

one :

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>F==G</code>	equality or not.
<code>x in F</code>	membership test.
<code>card(F)</code>	Cardinality of the field.
<code>repr(F)</code>	representation string.
<code>str(F)</code>	string.

Methods

4.3.5.1 createElement – create element of extended field

`createElement(self, seed: extended element seed) → ExtendedFieldElement`

Create an element of the field from seed. The result is an instance of **ExtendedFieldElement**.

The **seed** can be:

- a **FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial**
- an integer, which will be expanded in `card(basefield)` and interpreted as a polynomial.
- `basefield` element.
- a list of basefield elements interpreted as a polynomial coefficient.

4.3.5.2 getCharacteristic – get characteristic

`getCharacteristic(self) → integer`

Return the characteristic of the field.

4.3.5.3 issubring – subring test

`issubring(self, other: Ring) → bool`

Report whether another ring contains the field as subring.

4.3.5.4 issuperring – superring test

`issuperring(self, other: Ring) → bool`

Report whether the field is a superring of another ring.

4.3.5.5 primitive_element – generator of multiplicative group

`primitive_element(self) → ExtendedFieldElement`

Return a primitive element of the field, i.e., a generator of the multiplicative group.

4.3.6 ExtendedFieldElement – element of finite field

ExtendedFieldElement is a class for an element of F_q .

The class is a subclass of **FiniteFieldElement**.

Initialize (Constructor)

ExtendedFieldElement(representative: *FiniteFieldPolynomial*,
field: *ExtendedField*)
→ *ExtendedFieldElement*

Create an element of the finite extended field.

The argument **representative** must be an **FiniteFieldPolynomial** has same basefield. Another argument **field** must be an instance of ExtendedField.

Operations

operator	explanation
a+b	addition.
a-b	subtraction.
a*b	multiplication.
a/b	inverse multiplication.
a**n, pow(a,n)	power.
-a	negation.
+a	make a copy.
a==b	equality test.
a!=b	inequality test.
repr(a)	return representation string.
str(a)	return string.

Methods

4.3.6.1 `getRing` – get ring object

`getRing(self)` $\rightarrow$ *FinitePrimeField*

Return an instance of `FinitePrimeField` to which the element belongs.

4.3.6.2 `inverse` – inverse element

`inverse(self)` $\rightarrow$ *ExtendedFieldElement*

Return the inverse element.

4.4 group – algorithms for finite groups

- Classes
 - **Group**
 - **GroupElement**
 - **GenerateGroup**
 - **AbelianGenerate**

4.4.1 †Group – group structure

Initialize (Constructor)

Group(value: *class*, operation: *int=-1*) → **Group**

Create an object which wraps **value** (typically a ring or a field) only to expose its group structure.

The instance has methods defined for (abstract) group. For example, **identity** returns the identity element of the group from wrapped **value**.

value must be an instance of a class expresses group structure. **operation** must be 0 or 1; If **operation** is 0, **value** is regarded as the additive group. On the other hand, if **operation** is 1, **value** is considered as the multiplicative group. The default value of **operation** is 0.

†You can input an instance of **Group** itself as **value**. In this case, the default value of **operation** is the attribute **operation** of the instance.

Attributes

entity :

The wrapped object.

operation :

It expresses the mode of operation; 0 means additive, while 1 means multiplicative.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Return whether A and B are equal or not.
A!=B	Check whether A and B are not equal.
repr(A)	representation
str(A)	simple representation

Examples

```
>>> G1=group.Group(finitedfield.FinitePrimeField(37), 1)
>>> print(G1)
F_37
>>> G2=group.Group(intresidue.IntegerResidueClassRing(6), 0)
```

```
>>> print(G2)
Z/6Z
```

Methods

4.4.1.1 `setOperation` – change operation

`setOperation(self, operation: int) → (None)`

Change group type to additive (0) or multiplicative (1).

`operation` must be 0 or 1.

4.4.1.2 `†createElement` – generate a `GroupElement` instance

`createElement(self, *value) → GroupElement`

Return **GroupElement** object whose group is `self`, initialized with `value`.

†This method calls `self.entity.createElement`.

`value` must fit the form of argument for `self.entity.createElement`.

4.4.1.3 `†identity` – identity element

`identity(self) → GroupElement`

Return identity element (unit) of group.

Return zero (additive) or one (multiplicative) corresponding to **operation**.

†This method calls `self.entity.identity` or **entity** does not have the attribute then returns one or zero.

4.4.1.4 `grouporder` – order of the group

`grouporder(self) → int`

Return group order (cardinality) of `self`.

†This method calls `self.entity.grouporder`, `card` or `__len__`.

We assume that the group is finite, so returned value is expected as some `int`. If the group is infinite, we do not define the type of output by the method.

Examples

```
>>> G1=group.Group(finitefield.FinitePrimeField(37), 1)
>>> G1.grouporder()
36
>>> G1.setOperation(0)
>>> print(G1.identity())
FinitePrimeField,0 in F_37
>>> G1.grouporder()
37
```


4.4.2 GroupElement – elements of group structure

Initialize (Constructor)

GroupElement(value: *class*, operation: *int*==1) → **GroupElement**

Create an object which wraps **value** (typically a ring element or a field element) to make it behave as an element of group.

The instance has methods defined for an (abstract) element of group. For example, **inverse** returns the inverse element of **value** as the element of group object.

value must be an instance of a class expresses an element of group structure. **operation** must be 0 or 1; If **operation** is 0, **value** is regarded as the additive group. On the other hand, if **operation** is 1, **value** is considered as the multiplicative group. The default value of **operation** is 0.

†You can input an instance of **GroupElement** itself as **value**. In this case, the default value of **operation** is the attribute **operation** of the instance.

Attributes

entity :

The wrapped object.

set :

It is an instance of **Group**, which expresses the group to which **self** belongs.

operation :

It expresses the mode of operation; 0 means additive, while 1 means multiplicative.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Return whether A and B are equal or not.
A!=B	Check whether A and B are not equal.
A.ope(B)	Basic operation (additive +, multiplicative *)
A.ope2(n)	Extended operation (additive *, multiplicative **)
A.inverse()	Return the inverse element of self
repr(A)	representation
str(A)	simple representation

Examples

```
>>> G1=group.GroupElement(finitefield.FinitePrimeFieldElement(18, 37), 1)
>>> print(G1)
FinitePrimeField,18 in F_37
>>> G2=group.Group(intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(3, 6), 0)
IntegerResidueClass(3, 6)
```

Methods

4.4.2.1 `setOperation` – change operation

`setOperation(self, operation: int) → (None)`

Change group type to additive (0) or multiplicative (1).

`operation` must be 0 or 1.

4.4.2.2 `†getGroup` – generate a `Group` instance

`getGroup(self) → Group`

Return **Group** object to which `self` belongs.

†This method calls `self.entity.getRing` or `getGroup`.

†In an initialization of **GroupElement**, the attribute `set` is set as the value returned from the method.

4.4.2.3 `order` – order by factorization method

`order(self) → int`

Return the order of `self`.

†This method uses the factorization of order of group.

†We assume that the group is finite, so returned value is expected as some int.

†If the group is infinite, the method would raise an error or return an invalid value.

4.4.2.4 `t_order` – order by baby-step giant-step

`t_order(self, v: int=2) → int`

Return the order of `self`.

†This method uses Terr's baby-step giant-step algorithm.

This method does not use the order of group. You can put number of baby-step to `v`. †We assume that the group is finite, so returned value is expected as

some int. †If the group is infinite, the method would raise an error or return an invalid value.

v must be some int integer.

Examples

```
>>> G1=group.GroupElement(finitefield.FinitePrimeFieldElement(18, 37), 1)
>>> G1.order()
36
>>> G1.t_order()
36
```

4.4.3 †GenerateGroup – group structure with generator

Initialize (Constructor)

GenerateGroup(value: *class*, operation: *int*=-1) → **GroupElement**

Create an object which is generated by **value** as the element of group structure.

This initializes a group ‘including’ the group elements, not a group with generators, now. We do not recommend using this module now. The instance has methods defined for an (abstract) element of group. For example, **inverse** returns the inverse element of **value** as the element of group object. The class inherits the class **Group**.

value must be a list of generators. Each generator should be an instance of a class expresses an element of group structure. **operation** must be 0 or 1; If **operation** is 0, **value** is regarded as the additive group. On the other hand, if **operation** is 1, **value** is considered as the multiplicative group. The default value of **operation** is 0.

Examples

```
>>> G1=group.GenerateGroup([intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(2, 20),
... intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(6, 20)])
>>> G1.identity()
intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(0, 20)
```

4.4.4 AbelianGenerate – abelian group structure with generator

Initialize (Constructor)

The class inherits the class **GenerateGroup**.

4.4.4.1 relationLattice – relation between generators

relationLattice(self) → Matrix

Return a list of relation lattice basis as a square matrix each of whose column vector is a relation basis.

The relation basis, V satisfies that $\prod_i \text{generator}_i V_i = 1$.

4.4.4.2 computeStructure – abelian group structure

computeStructure(self) → tuple

Compute finite abelian group structure.

If **self** $G \simeq \oplus_i \langle h_i \rangle$, return $[(h_1, \text{ord}(h_1)), \dots, (h_n, \text{ord}(h_n))]$ and $\#G$, where $\langle h_i \rangle$ is a cyclic group with the generator h_i .

The output is a tuple which has two elements; the first element is a list which elements are a list of h_i and its order, on the other hand, the second element is the order of the group.

Examples

```
>>> G=AbelianGenerate([intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(2, 20),
... intresidue.IntegerResidueClass(6, 20)])
>>> G.relationLattice()
10 7
0 1
>>> G.computeStructure()
([IntegerResidueClassRing,IntegerResidueClass(2, 20), 10]), 10)
```

4.5 imaginary – complex numbers and its functions

The module `imaginary` provides complex numbers. The functions provided are mainly corresponding to the `cmath` standard module.

- **Classes**

- **ComplexField**
- **Complex**
- †**ExponentialPowerSeries**
- †**AbsoluteError**
- †**RelativeError**

- **Functions**

- **exp**
- **expi**
- **log**
- **sin**
- **cos**
- **tan**
- **sinh**
- **cosh**
- **tanh**
- **atanh**
- **sqrt**

This module also provides following constants:

e :
This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

pi :
This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

j :
j is the imaginary unit.

theComplexField :
theComplexField is the instance of **ComplexField**.

4.5.1 ComplexField – field of complex numbers

The class is for the field of complex numbers. The class has the single instance **theComplexField**.

This class is a subclass of **Field**.

Initialize (Constructor)

ComplexField() $\rightarrow$ *ComplexField*

Create an instance of ComplexField. You may not want to create an instance, since there is already **theComplexField**.

Attributes

zero :

It expresses The additive unit 0. (read only)

one :

It expresses The multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
in	membership test; return whether an element is in or not.
repr	return representation string.
str	return string.

Methods

4.5.1.1 createElement – create Imaginary object

`createElement(self, seed: integer) → Integer`

Return a Complex object with `seed`.

`seed` must be complex or numbers having embedding to complex.

4.5.1.2 getCharacteristic – get characteristic

`getCharacteristic(self) → integer`

Return the characteristic, zero.

4.5.1.3 issubring – subring test

`issubring(self, aRing: Ring) → bool`

Report whether another ring contains the complex field as subring.

4.5.1.4 issuperring – superring test

`issuperring(self, aRing: Ring) → bool`

Report whether the complex field contains another ring as subring.

4.5.2 Complex – a complex number

Complex is a class of complex number. Each instance has a coupled numbers; real and imaginary part of the number.

This class is a subclass of **FieldElement**.

All implemented operators in this class are delegated to complex type.

Initialize (Constructor)

Complex(*re: number im: number=0*) $\rightarrow$ *Imaginary*

Create a complex number.

re can be either real or complex number. If *re* is real and *im* is not given, then its imaginary part is zero.

Attributes

real :

It expresses the real part of complex number.

imag :

It expresses the imaginary part of complex number.

Methods

4.5.2.1 `getRing` – get ring object

`getRing(self)` → *ComplexField*

Return the complex field instance.

4.5.2.2 `arg` – argument of complex

`arg(self)` → *radian*

Return the angle between the x-axis and the number in the Gaussian plane.
radian must be Float.

4.5.2.3 `conjugate` – complex conjugate

`conjugate(self)` → *Complex*

Return the complex conjugate of the number.

4.5.2.4 `copy` – copied number

`copy(self)` → *Complex*

Return the copy of the number itself.

4.5.2.5 `inverse` – complex inverse

`inverse(self)` → *Complex*

Return the inverse of the number.

If the number is zero, `ZeroDivisionError` is raised.

4.5.3 ExponentialPowerSeries – exponential power series

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.4 AbsoluteError – absolute error

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.5 RelativeError – relative error

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.6 exp(function) – exponential value

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.7 expi(function) – imaginary exponential value

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.8 log(function) – logarithm

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.9 sin(function) – sine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.10 cos(function) – cosine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.11 tan(function) – tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.12 sinh(function) – hyperbolic sine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.13 cosh(function) – hyperbolic cosine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.14 tanh(function) – hyperbolic tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.15 `atanh(function)` – hyperbolic arc tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.5.16 `sqrt(function)` – square root

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.6 intresidue – integer residue

intresidue module provides integer residue classes or $\mathbf{Z}/m\mathbf{Z}$.

- Classes
 - **IntegerResidueClass**
 - **IntegerResidueClassRing**

4.6.1 IntegerResidueClass – integer residue class

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRingElement**.

Initialize (Constructor)

IntegerResidueClass(representative: *integer*, modulus: *integer*)
→ *Integer*

Create a residue class of modulus with residue representative.
modulus must be positive integer.

Operations

operator	explanation
a+b	addition.
a-b	subtraction.
a*b	multiplication.
a/b	division.
a**i, pow(a,i)	power.
-a	negation.
+a	make a copy.
a==b	equality or not.
a!=b	inequality or not.
repr(a)	return representation string.
str(a)	return string.

Methods

4.6.1.1 `getRing` – get ring object

`getRing(self)` → *IntegerResidueClassRing*

Return a ring to which it belongs.

4.6.1.2 `getResidue` – get residue

`getResidue(self)` → *integer*

Return the value of residue.

4.6.1.3 `getModulus` – get modulus

`getModulus(self)` → *integer*

Return the value of modulus.

4.6.1.4 `inverse` – inverse element

`inverse(self)` → *IntegerResidueClass*

Return the inverse element if it is invertible. Otherwise raise `ValueError`.

4.6.1.5 `minimumAbsolute` – minimum absolute representative

`minimumAbsolute(self)` → **Integer**

Return the minimum absolute representative integer of the residue class.

4.6.1.6 `minimumNonNegative` – smallest non-negative representative

`minimumNonNegative(self)` → **Integer**

Return the smallest non-negative representative element of the residue class.

†this method has an alias, named `toInteger`.

4.6.2 IntegerResidueClassRing – ring of integer residue

The class is for rings of integer residue classes.

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRing**.

Initialize (Constructor)

IntegerResidueClassRing(modulus: *integer*) $\rightarrow$ *IntegerResidueClassRing*

Create an instance of IntegerResidueClassRing. The argument `modulus = m` specifies an ideal $m\mathbb{Z}$.

Attributes

zero :

It expresses The additive unit 0. (read only)

one :

It expresses The multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>R==A</code>	ring equality.
<code>card(R)</code>	return cardinality. See also compatibility module.
<code>e in R</code>	return whether an element is in or not.
<code>repr(R)</code>	return representation string.
<code>str(R)</code>	return string.

Methods

4.6.2.1 createElement – create IntegerResidueClass object

createElement(self, seed: *integer*) → *Integer*

Return an IntegerResidueClass instance with **seed**.

4.6.2.2 isfield – field test

isfield(self) → *bool*

Return True if the modulus is prime, False if not. Since a finite domain is a field, other ring property tests are merely aliases of isfield; they are isdomain, iseclidean, isnoetherian, ispid, isufd.

4.6.2.3 getInstance – get instance of IntegerResidueClassRing

getInstance(cls, modulus: *integer*) → *IntegerResidueClass*

Return an instance of the class of specified modulus. Since this is a class method, use it as:

`IntegerResidueClassRing.getInstance(3)`
to create a $\mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$ object, for example.

4.7 lattice – Lattice

- Classes
 - **Lattice**
 - **LatticeElement**
- Functions
 - **LLL**

4.7.1 Lattice – lattice

Initialize (Constructor)

```
Lattice( basis: RingSquareMatrix, quadraticForm: RingSquareMatrix )  
        → Lattice
```

Create Lattice object.

Attributes

basis : The basis of **self** lattice.

quadraticForm : The quadratic form corresponding the inner product.

Methods

4.7.1.1 createElement – create element

`createElement(self, compo: list) → LatticeElement`

Create the element which has coefficients with given `compo`.

4.7.1.2 bilinearForm – bilinear form

`bilinearForm(self, v_1: Vector, v_2: Vector) → integer`

Return the inner product of v_1 and v_2 with `quadraticForm`.

4.7.1.3 isCyclic – Check whether cyclic lattice or not

`isCyclic(self) → bool`

Check whether `self` lattice is a cyclic lattice or not.

4.7.1.4 isIdeal – Check whether ideal lattice or not

`isIdeal(self) → bool`

Check whether `self` lattice is an ideal lattice or not.

4.7.2 LatticeElement – element of lattice

Initialize (Constructor)

```
LatticeElement( lattice: Lattice, compo: list, ) → LatticeElement
```

Create LatticeElement object.

Elements of lattices are represented as linear combinations of basis. The class inherits **Matrix**. Then, instances are regarded as $n \times 1$ matrix whose coefficients consist of `compo`, where n is the dimension of lattice.

`lattice` is an instance of Lattice object. `compo` is coefficients list of basis.

Attributes

`lattice` : the lattice which includes `self`

Methods

4.7.2.1 `getLattice` – Find lattice belongs to

`getLattice(self)` → **Lattice**

Obtain the Lattice object corresponding to `self`.

4.7.3 LLL(function) – LLL reduction

LLL(M: RingSquareMatrix) → L: RingSquareMatrix, T: RingSquareMatrix

Return LLL-reduced basis for the given basis M.

The output L is the LLL-reduced basis. T is the transportation matrix from the original basis to the LLL-reduced basis.

Examples

```
>>> M=mat.Matrix(3,3,[1,0,12,0,1,26,0,0,13]);  
>>> lat.LLL(M);  
([1, 0, 0]+[0, 1, 0]+[0, 0, 13], [1, 0, -12]+[0, 1, -26]+[0, 0, 1])
```

4.8 matrix – matrices

- **Classes**
 - **Matrix**
 - **SquareMatrix**
 - **RingMatrix**
 - **RingSquareMatrix**
 - **FieldMatrix**
 - **FieldSquareMatrix**
 - **MatrixRing**
 - **Subspace**
- **Functions**
 - **createMatrix**
 - **identityMatrix**
 - **unitMatrix**
 - **zeroMatrix**

The module matrix has also some exception classes.

MatrixSizeError : Report contradicting given input to the matrix size.

VectorsNotIndependent : Report column vectors are not independent.

NoInverseImage : Report any inverse image does not exist.

NoInverse : Report the matrix is not invertible.

This module using following type:

compo : compo must be one of these forms below.

- concatenated row lists, such as `[1,2]+[3,4]+[5,6]`.
- list of row lists, such as `[[1,2], [3,4], [5,6]]`.
- list of column tuples, such as `[(1, 3, 5), (2, 4, 6)]`.
- list of vectors whose dimension equals column, such as `vector.Vector([1, 3, 5]), vector.Vector([2, 4, 6])`.

The examples above represent the same matrix form as follows:

$$\begin{array}{cc} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{array}$$

4.8.1 Matrix – matrices

Initialize (Constructor)

```
Matrix(row: integer, column: integer, compo: compo=0, coeff_ring:
CommutativeRing=0)
    → Matrix
```

Create new matrices object.

†This constructor automatically changes the class to one of the following class: **RingMatrix**, **RingSquareMatrix**, **FieldMatrix**, **FieldSquareMatrix**.

Your input determines the class automatically by examining the matrix size and the coefficient ring. **row** and **column** must be integer, and **coeff_ring** must be an instance of **Ring**. Refer to **compo** for information about **compo**. If you abbreviate **compo**, it will be deemed to all zero list.

The list of expected inputs and outputs is as following:

- Matrix(**row**, **column**, **compo**, **coeff_ring**)
→ the **row**×**column** matrix whose elements are **compo** and coefficient ring is **coeff_ring**
- Matrix(**row**, **column**, **compo**)
→ the **row**×**column** matrix whose elements are **compo** (The coefficient ring is automatically determined.)
- Matrix(**row**, **column**, **coeff_ring**)
→ the **row**×**column** matrix whose coefficient ring is **coeff_ring** (All elements are 0 in **coeff_ring**.)
- Matrix(**row**, **column**)
→ the **row**×**column** matrix (The coefficient matrix is **Integer**. All elements are 0.)

Attributes

row : The row size of the matrix.

column : The column size of the matrix.

coeff_ring : The coefficient ring of the matrix.

compo : The elements of the matrix.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>M==N</code>	Return whether M and N are equal or not.
<code>M[i, j]</code>	Return the coefficient of i-th row, j-th column term of matrix M.
<code>M[i]</code>	Return the vector of i-th column term of matrix M.
<code>M[i, j]=c</code>	Replace the coefficient of i-th row, j-th column term of matrix M by c.
<code>M[j]=c</code>	Replace the vector of i-th column term of matrix M by vector c.
<code>c in M</code>	Check whether some element of M equals c.
<code>repr(M)</code>	Return the repr string of the matrix M. string represents list concatenated row vector lists.
<code>str(M)</code>	Return the str string of the matrix M.

Examples

```

>>> A = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [1,0,0]+[0,0,0])
>>> A.__class__.__name__
'RingMatrix'
>>> B = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [1,0,0,0,0,0])
>>> A == B
True
>>> B[1, 1] = 0
>>> A != B
True
>>> B == 0
True
>>> A[1, 1]
1
>>> print(repr(A))
[1, 0, 0]+[0, 0, 0]
>>> print(str(A))
1 0 0
0 0 0

```

Methods

4.8.1.1 map – apply function to elements

`map(self, function: function) → Matrix`

Return the matrix whose elements is applied `function` to.

†The function `map` is an analogy of built-in function `map`.

4.8.1.2 reduce – reduce elements iteratively

`reduce(self, function: function, initializer: RingElement=None)
→ RingElement`

Apply `function` from upper-left to lower-right, so as to reduce the iterable to a single value.

†The function `map` is an analogy of built-in function `reduce`.

4.8.1.3 copy – create a copy

`copy(self) → Matrix`

create a copy of `self`.

†The matrix generated by the function is same matrix to `self`, but not same as a instance.

4.8.1.4 set – set compo

`set(self, compo: compo) → (None)`

Substitute the list `compo` for `compo`.

`compo` must be the form of `compo`.

4.8.1.5 setRow – set m-th row vector

```
setRow(self, m: integer, arg: list/Vector) → (None)
```

Substitute the list/Vector `arg` as m-th row.

The length of `arg` must be same to `self.column`.

4.8.1.6 setColumn – set n-th column vector

```
setColumn(self, n: integer, arg: list/Vector) → (None)
```

Substitute the list/Vector `arg` as n-th column.

The length of `arg` must be same to `self.row`.

4.8.1.7 getRow – get i-th row vector

```
getRow(self, i: integer) → Vector
```

Return i-th row in form of `self`.

The function returns a row vector (an instance of `Vector`).

4.8.1.8 getColumn – get j-th column vector

```
getColumn(self, j: integer) → Vector
```

Return j-th column in form of `self`.

4.8.1.9 swapRow – swap two row vectors

```
swapRow(self, m1: integer, m2: integer) → (None)
```

Swap `self`'s m1-th row vector and m2-th row one.

4.8.1.10 swapColumn – swap two column vectors

```
swapColumn(self, n1: integer, n2: integer) → (None)
```

Swap `self`'s `n1`-th column vector and `n2`-th column one.

4.8.1.11 insertRow – insert row vectors

```
insertRow(self, i: integer, arg: list/Vector/Matrix)  
→ (None)
```

Insert row vectors `arg` to `i`-th row.

`arg` must be list, **Vector** or **Matrix**. The length (or **column**) of it should be same to the column of `self`.

4.8.1.12 insertColumn – insert column vectors

```
insertColumn(self, j: integer, arg: list/Vector/Matrix)  
→ (None)
```

Insert column vectors `arg` to `j`-th column.

`arg` must be list, **Vector** or **Matrix**. The length (or **row**) of it should be same to the row of `self`.

4.8.1.13 extendRow – extend row vectors

```
extendRow(self, arg: list/Vector/Matrix) → (None)
```

Join `self` with row vectors `arg` (in vertical way).

The function combines `self` with the last row vector of `self`. That is, `extendRow(arg)` is same to `insertRow(self.row+1, arg)`.

`arg` must be list, **Vector** or **Matrix**. The length (or **column**) of it should be same to the column of `self`.

4.8.1.14 extendColumn – extend column vectors

```
extendColumn(self, arg: list/Vector/Matrix) → (None)
```

Join `self` with column vectors `arg` (in horizontal way).

The function combines `self` with the last column vector of `self`. That is,

`extendColumn(arg)` is same to `insertColumn(self.column+1, arg)`.

`arg` must be list, **Vector** or **Matrix**. The length (or **row**) of it should be same to the row of `self`.

4.8.1.15 deleteRow – delete row vector

`deleteRow(self, i: integer) → (None)`

Delete i-th row vector.

4.8.1.16 deleteColumn – delete column vector

`deleteColumn(self, j: integer) → (None)`

Delete j-th column vector.

4.8.1.17 transpose – transpose matrix

`transpose(self) → Matrix`

Return the transpose of `self`.

4.8.1.18 getBlock – block matrix

`getBlock(self, i: integer, j: integer, row: integer, column: integer=None) → Matrix`

Return the `row`×`column` block matrix from the (i, j)-element.

If `column` is omitted, `column` is considered as same value to `row`.

4.8.1.19 subMatrix – submatrix

`subMatrix(self, I: integer, J: integer=None) → Matrix`

`subMatrix(self, I: list, J: list=None) → Matrix`

The function has a twofold significance.

- I and J are integer:
Return submatrix deleted I-th row and J-th column.
- I and J are list:
Return the submatrix composed of elements from `self` assigned by rows I and columns J, respectively.

If J is omitted, J is considered as same value to I.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6])
>>> A
[1, 2, 3]+[4, 5, 6]
>>> A.map(complex)
[(1+0j), (2+0j), (3+0j)]+[(4+0j), (5+0j), (6+0j)]
>>> A.reduce(max)
6
>>> A.swapRow(1, 2)
>>> A
[4, 5, 6]+[1, 2, 3]
>>> A.extendColumn([-2, -1])
>>> A
[4, 5, 6, -2]+[1, 2, 3, -1]
>>> B = matrix.Matrix(3, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])
>>> B.subMatrix(2, 3)
[1, 2]+[7, 8]
>>> B.subMatrix([2, 3], [1, 2])
[4, 5]+[7, 8]
```

4.8.2 SquareMatrix – square matrices

Initialize (Constructor)

```
SquareMatrix(row: integer, column: integer=0, compo: compo=0,  
coeff_ring: CommutativeRing=0)  
→ SquareMatrix
```

Create new square matrices object.

SquareMatrix is subclass of **Matrix**. †This constructor automatically changes the class to one of the following class: **RingMatrix**, **RingSquareMatrix**, **FieldMatrix**, **FieldSquareMatrix**.

Your input determines the class automatically by examining the matrix size and the coefficient ring. **row** and **column** must be integer, and **coeff_ring** must be an instance of **Ring**. Refer to **compo** for information about **compo**. If you abbreviate **compo**, it will be deemed to all zero list.

The list of expected inputs and outputs is as following:

- Matrix(**row**, **compo**, **coeff_ring**)
→ the **row** square matrix whose elements are **compo** and coefficient ring is **coeff_ring**
- Matrix(**row**, **compo**)
→ the **row** square matrix whose elements are **compo** (coefficient ring is automatically determined)
- Matrix(**row**, **coeff_ring**)
→ the **row** square matrix whose coefficient ring is **coeff_ring** (All elements are 0 in **coeff_ring**.)
- Matrix(**row**)
→ the **row** square matrix (The coefficient ring is Integer. All elements are 0.)

†We can initialize as **Matrix**, but **column** must be same to **row** in the case.

Methods

4.8.2.1 isUpperTriangularMatrix – check upper triangular

`isUpperTriangularMatrix(self)` → *True/False*

Check whether `self` is upper triangular matrix or not.

4.8.2.2 isLowerTriangularMatrix – check lower triangular

`isLowerTriangularMatrix(self)` → *True/False*

Check whether `self` is lower triangular matrix or not.

4.8.2.3 isDiagonalMatrix – check diagonal matrix

`isDiagonalMatrix(self)` → *True/False*

Check whether `self` is diagonal matrix or not.

4.8.2.4 isScalarMatrix – check scalar matrix

`isScalarMatrix(self)` → *True/False*

Check whether `self` is scalar matrix or not.

4.8.2.5 isSymmetricMatrix – check symmetric matrix

`isSymmetricMatrix(self)` → *True/False*

Check whether `self` is symmetric matrix or not.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.SquareMatrix(3, [1,2,3]+[0,5,6]+[0,0,9])
>>> A.isUpperTriangularMatrix()
```

```
True
>>> B = matrix.SquareMatrix(3, [1,0,0]+[0,-2,0]+[0,0,7])
>>> B.isDiagonalMatrix()
True
```

4.8.3 RingMatrix – matrix whose elements belong ring

```
RingMatrix(row: integer, column: integer, compo: compo=0, coeff_ring:
CommutativeRing=0)
    → RingMatrix
```

Create matrix whose coefficient ring belongs ring.

RingMatrix is subclass of **Matrix**. See Matrix for getting information about the initialization.

Operations

operator	explanation
M+N	Return the sum of matrices M and N.
M-N	Return the difference of matrices M and N.
M*N	Return the product of M and N. N must be matrix, vector or scalar
M % d	Return M modulo d. d must be nonzero integer.
-M	Return the matrix whose coefficients have inverted signs of M.
+M	Return the copy of M.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6])
>>> B = matrix.Matrix(2, 3, [7,8,9]+[0,-1,-2])
>>> A + B
[8, 10, 12]+[4, 4, 4]
>>> A - B
[-6, -6, -6]+[4, 6, 8]
>>> A * B.transpose()
[50, -8]+[122, -17]
>>> -B * vector.Vector([1, -1, 0])
Vector([1, -1])
>>> 2 * A
[2, 4, 6]+[8, 10, 12]
>>> B % 3
[1, 2, 0]+[0, 2, 1]
```

Methods

4.8.3.1 getCoefficientRing – get coefficient ring

`getCoefficientRing(self)` → *CommutativeRing*

Return the coefficient ring of `self`.

This method checks all elements of `self` and set `coeff_ring` to the valid coefficient ring.

4.8.3.2 toFieldMatrix – set field as coefficient ring

`toFieldMatrix(self)` → (*None*)

Change the class of the matrix to **FieldMatrix** or **FieldSquareMatrix**, where the coefficient ring will be the quotient field of the current domain.

4.8.3.3 toSubspace – regard as vector space

`toSubspace(self, isbasis: True/False=None)` → (*None*)

Change the class of the matrix to **Subspace**, where the coefficient ring will be the quotient field of the current domain.

4.8.3.4 hermiteNormalForm (HNF) – Hermite Normal Form

`hermiteNormalForm(self)` → *RingMatrix*

`HNF(self)` → *RingMatrix*

Return upper triangular Hermite normal form (HNF).

4.8.3.5 exthermiteNormalForm (extHNF) – extended Hermite Normal Form algorithm

`exthermiteNormalForm(self)` → (*RingSquareMatrix, RingMatrix*)

`extHNF(self)` → (*RingSquareMatrix, RingMatrix*)

Return Hermite normal form M and U satisfied $\text{self}U = M$.

The function returns tuple (U, M) , where U is an instance of **RingSquareMatrix** and M is an instance of **RingMatrix**.

4.8.3.6 kernelAsModule – kernel as $\mathbb{Z}$ -module

kernelAsModule(self) $\rightarrow$ *RingMatrix*

Return kernel as $\mathbb{Z}$ -module.

The difference between the function and **kernel** is that each elements of the returned value are integer.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.Matrix(3, 4, [1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,-1,-2,-3])
>>> print(A.hermiteNormalForm())
0 36 29 28
0 0 1 0
0 0 0 1
>>> U, M = A.hermiteNormalForm()
>>> A * U == M
True
>>> B = matrix.Matrix(1, 2, [2, 1])
>>> print(B.kernelAsModule())
1
-2
```

4.8.4 RingSquareMatrix – square matrix whose elements belong ring

```
RingSquareMatrix(row: integer, column: integer=0, compo: compo=0,  
coeff_ring: CommutativeRing=0)  
→ RingMatrix
```

Create square matrix whose coefficient ring belongs ring.

RingSquareMatrix is subclass of **RingMatrix** and **SquareMatrix**. See SquareMatrix for getting information about the initialization.

Operations

operator	explanation
M**c	Return the c-th power of matrices M.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.RingSquareMatrix(3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])  
>>> A ** 2  
[30, 36, 42]+[66, 81, 96]+[102, 126, 150]
```

Methods

4.8.4.1 `getRing` – get matrix ring

`getRing(self)` → *MatrixRing*

Return the **MatrixRing** belonged to by `self`.

4.8.4.2 `isOrthogonalMatrix` – check orthogonal matrix

`isOrthogonalMatrix(self)` → *True/False*

Check whether `self` is orthogonal matrix or not.

4.8.4.3 `isAlternatingMatrix` (`isAntiSymmetricMatrix`, `isSkewSymmetricMatrix`) – check alternating matrix

`isAlternatingMatrix(self)` → *True/False*

Check whether `self` is alternating matrix or not.

4.8.4.4 `isSingular` – check singular matrix

`isSingular(self)` → *True/False*

Check whether `self` is singular matrix or not.

The function determines whether determinant of `self` is 0. Note that the non-singular matrix does not automatically mean invertible matrix; the nature that the matrix is invertible depends on its coefficient ring.

4.8.4.5 `trace` – trace

`trace(self)` → *RingElement*

Return the trace of `self`.

4.8.4.6 determinant – determinant

determinant(self) → *RingElement*

Return the determinant of **self**.

4.8.4.7 cofactor – cofactor

cofactor(self, i: *integer*, j: *integer*) → *RingElement*

Return the (i, j)-cofactor.

4.8.4.8 commutator – commutator

commutator(self, N: *RingSquareMatrix element*) → *RingSquareMatrix*

Return the commutator for **self** and N.

The commutator for M and N, which is denoted as $[M, N]$, is defined as $[M, N] = MN - NM$.

4.8.4.9 characteristicMatrix – characteristic matrix

characteristicMatrix(self) → *RingSquareMatrix*

Return the characteristic matrix of **self**.

4.8.4.10 adjugateMatrix – adjugate matrix

adjugateMatrix(self) → *RingSquareMatrix*

Return the adjugate matrix of **self**.

The adjugate matrix for M is the matrix N such that $MN = NM = (\det M)E$, where E is the identity matrix.

4.8.4.11 cofactorMatrix (cofactors) – cofactor matrix

cofactorMatrix(self) → *RingSquareMatrix*

cofactors(self) → *RingSquareMatrix*

Return the cofactor matrix of **self**.

The cofactor matrix for **M** is the matrix whose (i, j) element is (i, j) -cofactor of **M**. The cofactor matrix is same to transpose of the adjugate matrix.

4.8.4.12 smithNormalForm (SNF, elementary_divisor) – Smith Normal Form (SNF)

smithNormalForm(self) → *RingSquareMatrix*

SNF(self) → *RingSquareMatrix*

elementary_divisor(self) → *RingSquareMatrix*

Return the list of diagonal elements of the Smith Normal Form (SNF) for **self**.

The function assumes that **self** is non-singular.

4.8.4.13 extsmithNormalForm (extSNF) – Smith Normal Form (SNF)

extsmithNormalForm(self) → (*RingSquareMatrix*, *RingSquareMatrix*, *RingSquareMatrix*)

extSNF(self) → *RingSquareMatrix*, *RingSquareMatrix*, *RingSquareMatrix*

Return the Smith normal form **M** for **self** and **U, V** satisfied **UselfV = M**.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.RingSquareMatrix(3, [3,-5,8]+[-9,2,7]+[6,1,-4])
>>> A.trace()
1
>>> A.determinant()
-243
>>> B = matrix.RingSquareMatrix(3, [87,38,80]+[13,6,12]+[65,28,60])
>>> U, V, M = B.extsmithNormalForm()
>>> U * B * V == M
True
```

```
>>> print(M)
4 0 0
0 2 0
0 0 1
>>> B.smithNormalForm()
[4, 2, 1]
```

4.8.5 FieldMatrix – matrix whose elements belong field

FieldMatrix(row: *integer*, column: *integer*, compo: *compo*=0, coeff_ring: *CommutativeRing*=0)
→ *RingMatrix*

Create matrix whose coefficient ring belongs field.

FieldMatrix is subclass of **RingMatrix**. See **Matrix** for getting information about the initialization.

Operations

operator	explanation
M/d	Return the division of M by d.d must be scalar.
M//d	Return the division of M by d.d must be scalar.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.FieldMatrix(3, 3, [1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9])
>>> A / 210
1/210 1/105 1/70
2/105 1/42 1/35
1/30 4/105 3/70
```

Methods

4.8.5.1 kernel – kernel

kernel(self) → *FieldMatrix*

Return the kernel of **self**.

The output is the matrix whose column vectors form basis of the kernel.
The function returns None if the kernel do not exist.

4.8.5.2 image – image

image(self) → *FieldMatrix*

Return the image of **self**.

The output is the matrix whose column vectors form basis of the image.
The function returns None if the kernel do not exist.

4.8.5.3 rank – rank

rank(self) → *integer*

Return the rank of **self**.

4.8.5.4 inverseImage – inverse image: base solution of linear system

inverseImage(self, V: *Vector/RingMatrix*) → *RingMatrix*

Return an inverse image of V by **self**.

The function returns one solution of the linear equation **self**X = V.

4.8.5.5 solve – solve linear system

solve(self, B: *Vector/RingMatrix*) → (*RingMatrix*, *RingMatrix*)

Solve **self**X = B.

The function returns a particular solution **sol** and the kernel of **self** as a

matrix. If you only have to obtain the particular solution, use **inverseImage**.

4.8.5.6 columnEchelonForm – column echelon form

columnEchelonForm(self) → *RingMatrix*

Return the column reduced echelon form.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.FieldMatrix(2, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6])
>>> print(A.kernel)
1/1
-2/1
1
>>> print(A.image())
1 2
4 5
>>> C = matrix.FieldMatrix(4, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9]+[-1,-2,-3])
>>> D = matrix.FieldMatrix(4, 2, [1,0]+[7,6]+[13,12]+[-1,0])
>>> print(C.inverseImage(D))
3/1 4/1
-1/1 -2/1
0/1 0/1
>>> sol, ker = C.solve(D)
>>> C * (sol + ker[0]) == D
True
>>> AA = matrix.FieldMatrix(3, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])
>>> print(AA.columnEchelonForm())
0/1 2/1 -1/1
0/1 1/1 0/1
0/1 0/1 1/1
```

4.8.6 FieldSquareMatrix – square matrix whose elements belong field

```
FieldSquareMatrix(row: integer, column: integer=0, compo: compo=0,  
coeff_ring: CommutativeRing=0)  
→ FieldSquareMatrix
```

Create square matrix whose coefficient ring belongs field.

FieldSquareMatrix is subclass of **FieldMatrix** and **SquareMatrix**.

†The function **RingSquareMatrix**determinant is overridden and use different algorithm from one used in **RingSquareMatrix**determinant;the function calls **FieldSquareMatrix**triangulate. See **SquareMatrix** for getting information about the initialization.

Methods

4.8.6.1 triangulate - triangulate by elementary row operation

triangulate(self) → *FieldSquareMatrix*

Return an upper triangulated matrix obtained by elementary row operations.

4.8.6.2 inverse - inverse matrix

inverse(self V: *Vector/RingMatrix*=None) → *FieldSquareMatrix*

Return the inverse of **self**. If **V** is given, then return **self**⁽⁻¹⁾**V**.

‡If the matrix is not invertible, then raise **NoInverse**.

4.8.6.3 hessenbergForm - Hessenberg form

hessenbergForm(self) → *FieldSquareMatrix*

Return the Hessenberg form of **self**.

4.8.6.4 LUdecomposition - LU decomposition

LUdecomposition(self) → (*FieldSquareMatrix*, *FieldSquareMatrix*)

Return the lower triangular matrix **L** and the upper triangular matrix **U** such that **self** == **LU**.

4.8.7 †MatrixRing – ring of matrices

```
MatrixRing(size: integer, scalars: CommutativeRing)  
→ MatrixRing
```

Create a ring of matrices with given **size** and coefficient ring **scalars**.

MatrixRing is subclass of **Ring**.

Methods

4.8.7.1 unitMatrix - unit matrix

`unitMatrix(self)` $\rightarrow$ *RingSquareMatrix*

Return the unit matrix.

4.8.7.2 zeroMatrix - zero matrix

`zeroMatrix(self)` $\rightarrow$ *RingSquareMatrix*

Return the zero matrix.

Examples

```
>>> M = matrix.MatrixRing(3, rational.theIntegerRing)
>>> print(M)
M_3(Z)
>>> M.unitMatrix()
[1, 0, 0]+[0, 1, 0]+[0, 0, 1]
>>> M.zero
[0, 0, 0]+[0, 0, 0]+[0, 0, 0]
```

4.8.7.3 getInstance(class function) - get cached instance

getInstance(cls, size: *integer*, scalars: *CommutativeRing*)
→ *RingSquareMatrix*

Return an instance of MatrixRing of given **size** and ring of scalars.

The merit of using the method instead of the constructor is that the instances created by the method are cached and reused for efficiency.

Examples

```
>>> print(MatrixRing.getInstance(3, rational.theIntegerRing))  
M_3(Z)
```

4.8.8 Subspace – subspace of finite dimensional vector space

```
Subspace(row: integer, column: integer=0, compo: compo=0, coeff_ring:
CommutativeRing=0, isbasis: True/False=None)
→ Subspace
```

Create subspace of some finite dimensional vector space over a field.

Subspace is subclass of **FieldMatrix**.

See **Matrix** for getting information about the initialization. The subspace expresses the space generated by column vectors of **self**.

If **isbasis** is True, we assume that column vectors are linearly independent.

Attributes

isbasis The attribute indicates the linear independence of column vectors, i.e., if they form a basis of the space then **isbasis** should be True, otherwise False.

Methods

4.8.8.1 issubspace - check subspace of self

Subspace(self, other: *Subspace*) → *True/False*

Return True if the subspace instance is a subspace of the **other**, or False otherwise.

4.8.8.2 toBasis - select basis

toBasis(self) → (*None*)

Rewrite **self** so that its column vectors form a basis, and set True to its **isbasis**.

The function does nothing if **isbasis** is already True.

4.8.8.3 supplementBasis - to full rank

supplementBasis(self) → *Subspace*

Return full rank matrix by supplementing bases for **self**.

4.8.8.4 sumOfSubspaces - sum as subspace

sumOfSubspaces(self, other: *Subspace*) → *Subspace*

Return a matrix whose columns form a basis for sum of two subspaces.

4.8.8.5 intersectionOfSubspaces - intersection as subspace

intersectionOfSubspaces(self, other: *Subspace*) → *Subspace*

Return a matrix whose columns form a basis for intersection of two subspaces.

Examples

```
>>> A = matrix.Subspace(4, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9]+[10,11,12])
>>> A.toBasis()
>>> print(A)
1 2
4 5
7 8
10 11
>>> B = matrix.Subspace(3, 2, [1,2]+[3,4]+[5,7])
>>> print(B.supplementBasis())
1 2 0
3 4 0
5 7 1
>>> C = matrix.Subspace(4, 1, [1,2,3,4])
>>> D = matrix.Subspace(4, 2, [2,-4]+[4,-3]+[6,-2]+[8,-1])
>>> print(C.intersectionOfSubspaces(D))
-2/1
-4/1
-6/1
-8/1
```

4.8.8.6 fromMatrix(class function) - create subspace

```
fromMatrix(cls, mat: FieldMatrix, isbasis: True/False=None)  
→ Subspace
```

Create a Subspace instance from a matrix instance `mat`, whose class can be any of subclasses of `Matrix`.

Please use this method if you want a Subspace instance for sure.

4.8.9 createMatrix[function] – create an instance

```
createMatrix(row: integer, column: integer=0, compo: compo=0,  
coeff_ring: CommutativeRing=None)  
→ RingMatrix
```

Create an instance of **RingMatrix**, **RingSquareMatrix**, **FieldMatrix** or **FieldSquareMatrix**.

Your input determines the class automatically by examining the matrix size and the coefficient ring. See **Matrix** or **SquareMatrix** for getting information about the initialization.

4.8.10 identityMatrix(unitMatrix)[function] – unit matrix

```
identityMatrix(size: integer, coeff: CommutativeR-  
ing/CommutativeRingElement=None)  
→ RingMatrix
```

```
unitMatrix(size: integer, coeff: CommutativeR-  
ing/CommutativeRingElement=None)  
→ RingMatrix
```

Return `size`-dimensional unit matrix.

`coeff` enables us to create matrix not only in integer but in coefficient ring which is determined by `coeff`.

`coeff` must be an instance of **Ring** or a multiplicative unit (one).

4.8.11 zeroMatrix[function] – zero matrix

```
zeroMatrix(row: integer, column: 0=, coeff: CommutativeR-  
ing/CommutativeRingElement=None)  
→ RingMatrix
```

Return `row` × `column` zero matrix.

`coeff` enables us to create matrix not only in integer but in coefficient ring which is determined by `coeff`.

`coeff` must be an instance of **Ring** or an additive unit (zero). If `column` is abbreviated, `column` is set same to `row`.

Examples

```
>>> M = matrix.createMatrix(3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9])
>>> print(M)
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
>>> O = matrix.zeroMatrix(2, 3, imaginary.ComplexField())
>>> print(O)
0 + 0j 0 + 0j 0 + 0j
0 + 0j 0 + 0j 0 + 0j
```


4.9 module – module/ideal with HNF

- Classes
 - Submodule
 - Module
 - Ideal
 - Ideal_with_generator

4.9.1 Submodule – submodule as matrix representation

Initialize (Constructor)

```
Submodule(row: integer, column: integer, compo: compo=0, coeff_ring:  
CommutativeRing=0, ishnf: True/False=None)  
→ Submodule
```

Create a submodule with matrix representation.

Submodule is subclass of **RingMatrix**.

We assume that `coeff_ring` is a PID (principal ideal domain). Then, we have the HNF(hermite normal form) corresponding to a matrices.

If `ishnf` is True, we assume that the input matrix is a HNF.

Attributes

ishnf If the matrix is a HNF, then `ishnf` should be True, otherwise False.

Methods

4.9.1.1 `getGenerators` – generator of module

`getGenerators(self) → list`

Return a (current) generator of the module `self`.

Return the list of vectors consisting of a generator.

4.9.1.2 `isSubmodule` – Check whether submodule of self

`isSubmodule(self, other: Submodule) → True/False`

Return True if the submodule instance is a submodule of the `other`, or False otherwise.

4.9.1.3 `isEqual` – Check whether self and other are same module

`isEqual(self, other: Submodule) → True/False`

Return True if the submodule instance is `other` as module, or False otherwise.

You should use the method for equality test of module, not matrix. For equality test of matrix simply, use `self==other`.

4.9.1.4 `isContain` – Check whether other is in self

`isContains(self, other: vector.Vector) → True/False`

Determine whether `other` is in `self` or not.

If you want to represent `other` as linear combination with the HNF generator of `self`, use `represent_element`.

4.9.1.5 `toHNF` - change to HNF

`toHNF(self) → (None)`

Rewrite **self** to HNF (hermite normal form), and set **True** to its **ishnf**.

Note that HNF do not always give basis of **self**. (i.e. HNF may be redundant.)

4.9.1.6 sumOfSubmodules - sum as submodule

sumOfSubmodules(self, other: *Submodule*) → *Submodule*

Return a module which is sum of two subspaces.

4.9.1.7 intersectionOfSubmodules - intersection as submodule

**intersectionOfSubmodules(self, other: *Submodule*)
→ *Submodule***

Return a module which is intersection of two subspaces.

4.9.1.8 represent_element – represent element as linear combination

represent_element(self, other: *vector.Vector*) → *vector.Vector*/*False*

Represent **other** as a linear combination with HNF generators.

If **other** not in **self**, return **False**. Note that this method calls **toHNF**.

The method returns coefficients as an instance of **Vector**.

4.9.1.9 linear_combination – compute linear combination

linear_combination(self, coeff: *list*) → *vector.Vector*

For given **Z**-coefficients **coeff**, return a vector corresponding to a linear combination of (current) basis.

coeff must be a list of instances in **RingElement** whose size is the column of **self**.

Examples

```

>>> A = module.Submodule(4, 3, [1,2,3]+[4,5,6]+[7,8,9]+[10,11,12])
>>> A.toHNF()
>>> print(A)
9 1
6 1
3 1
0 1
>>> A.getGenerator
[Vector([9, 6, 3, 0]), Vector([1, 1, 1, 1])]
>>> V = vector.Vector([10,7,4,1])
>>> A.represent_element(V)
Vector([1, 1])
>>> V == A.linear_combination([1,1])
True
>>> B = module.Submodule(4, 1, [1,2,3,4])
>>> C = module.Submodule(4, 2, [2,-4]+[4,-3]+[6,-2]+[8,-1])
>>> print(B.intersectionOfSubmodules(C))
2
4
6
8

```

4.9.2 fromMatrix(class function) - create submodule

```
fromMatrix(cls, mat: RingMatrix, ishnf: True/False=None)  
→ Submodule
```

Create a Submodule instance from a matrix instance `mat`, whose class can be any of subclasses of Matrix.

Please use this method if you want a Submodule instance for sure.

4.9.3 Module - module over a number field

Initialize (Constructor)

```
Module(pair_mat_repr:    list/matrix,    number_field:    al-
gfield.NumberField, base: list/matrix.SquareMatrix=None, ishnf:
bool=False)
    → Module
```

Create a new module object over a number field.

A module is a finitely generated sub $\mathbf{Z}$ -module. Note that we do not assume rank of a module is $\deg(\text{number_field})$.

We represent a module as generators respect to base module over $\mathbf{Z}[\theta]$, where θ is a solution of **number_field.polynomial**.

`pair_mat_repr` should be one of the following form:

- $[M, d]$, where M is a list of integral tuple/vectors whose size is the degree of **number_field** and d is a denominator.
- $[M, d]$, where M is an integral matrix whose the number of row is the degree of **number_field** and d is a denominator.
- a rational matrix whose the number of row is the degree of **number_field**.

Also, `base` should be one of the following form:

- a list of rational tuple/vectors whose size is the degree of **number_field**
- a square non-singular rational matrix whose size is the degree of **number_field**

The module is internally represented as $\frac{1}{d}M$ with respect to **base**, where d is **denominator** and M is **mat_repr**. If `ishnf` is True, we assume that `mat_repr` is a HNF.

Attributes

mat_repr : an instance of **Submodule** M whose size is the degree of **number_field**

denominator : an integer d

base : a square non-singular rational matrix whose size is the degree of **number_field**

number_field : the number field over which the module is defined

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>M==N</code>	Return whether M and N are equal or not as module.
<code>c in M</code>	Check whether some element of M equals c.
<code>M+N</code>	Return the sum of M and N as module.
<code>M*N</code>	Return the product of M and N as the ideal computation. N must be module or scalar(i.e. an element of number_field). If you want to compute the intersection of <i>M</i> and <i>N</i> , see intersect .
<code>M**c</code>	Return M to c based on the ideal multiplication.
<code>repr(M)</code>	Return the repr string of the module M.
<code>str(M)</code>	Return the str string of the module M.

Examples

```

>>> F = algfield.NumberField([2,0,1])
>>> M_1 = module.Module([matrix.RingMatrix(2,2,[1,0]+[0,2]), 2], F)
>>> M_2 = module.Module([matrix.RingMatrix(2,2,[2,0]+[0,5]), 3], F)
>>> print(M_1)
([1, 0]+[0, 2], 2)
over
([1, 0]+[0, 1], NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print(M_1 + M_2)
([1, 0]+[0, 2], 6)
over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print(M_1 * 2)
([1, 0]+[0, 2], 1)
over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print(M_1 * M_2)
([2, 0]+[0, 1], 6)
over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print(M_1 ** 2)
([1, 0]+[0, 2], 4)
over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
NumberField([2, 0, 1]))

```


Methods

4.9.3.1 toHNF - change to hermite normal form(HNF)

`toHNF(self) → (None)`

Change `self.mat_repr` to the hermite normal form(HNF).

4.9.3.2 copy - create copy

`copy(self) → Module`

Create copy of `self`.

4.9.3.3 intersect - intersection

`intersect(self, other: Module) → Module`

Return intersection of `self` and `other`.

4.9.3.4 issubmodule - Check submodule

`submodule(self, other: Module) → True/False`

Check `self` is submodule of `other`.

4.9.3.5 issupermodule - Check supermodule

`supermodule(self, other: Module) → True/False`

Check `self` is supermodule of `other`.

4.9.3.6 represent_element - Represent as linear combination

`represent_element(self, other: algfield.BasicAlgNumber)
→ list/False`

Represent **other** as a linear combination with generators of **self**. If **other** is not in **self**, return False.

Note that we do not assume **self.mat_repr** is HNF.

The output is a list of integers if **other** is in **self**.

4.9.3.7 `change_base_module` - Change base

```
change_base_module(self, other_base: list/matrix.RingSquareMatrix)
    → Module
```

Return the module which is equal to **self** respect to **other_base**.

other_base follows the form **base**.

4.9.3.8 `index` - size of module

```
index(self) → rational.Rational
```

Return the order of a residue group over **self.base**. That is, return $[M : N]$ if $N \subset M$ or $[N : M]^{-1}$ if $M \subset N$, where M is the module **self** and N is the module corresponding to **self.base**.

4.9.3.9 `smallest_rational` - a **Z**-generator in the rational field

```
smallest_rational(self) → rational.Rational
```

Return the **Z**-generator of intersection of the module **self** and the rational field.

Examples

```
>>> F = algfield.NumberField([1,0,2])
>>> M_1=module.Module([matrix.RingMatrix(2,2,[1,0]+[0,2]), 2], F)
>>> M_2=module.Module([matrix.RingMatrix(2,2,[2,0]+[0,5]), 3], F)
>>> print(M_1.intersect(M_2))
([2, 0]+[0, 5], 1)
over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
```

```

NumberField([2, 0, 1])
>>> M_1.represent_element( F.createElement( [[2,4], 1] ) )
[4, 4]
>>> print(M_1.change_base_module( matrix.FieldSquareMatrix(2, 2, [1,0]+[0,1]) / 2 ))
([1, 0]+[0, 2], 1)
over
([Rational(1, 2), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 2)],
 NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> M_2.index()
Rational(10, 9)
>>> M_2.smallest_rational()
Rational(2, 3)

```

4.9.4 Ideal - ideal over a number field

Initialize (Constructor)

```
Ideal(pair_mat_repr: list/matrix, number_field: algfield.NumberField,  
base: list/matrix.SquareMatrix=None, ishnf: bool=False)  
→ Ideal
```

Create a new ideal object over a number field.

Ideal is subclass of **Module**.

Refer to initialization of **Module**.

Methods

4.9.4.1 `inverse` – `inverse`

`inverse(self) → Ideal`

Return the inverse ideal of `self`.

This method calls `self.number_field.integer_ring`.

4.9.4.2 `issubideal` – Check subideal

`issubideal(self, other: Ideal) → Ideal`

Check `self` is subideal of `other`.

4.9.4.3 `issuperideal` – Check superideal

`issuperideal(self, other: Ideal) → Ideal`

Check `self` is superideal of `other`.

4.9.4.4 `gcd` – greatest common divisor

`gcd(self, other: Ideal) → Ideal`

Return the greatest common divisor(gcd) of `self` and `other` as ideal.

This method simply executes `self+other`.

4.9.4.5 `lcm` – least common multiplier

`lcm(self, other: Ideal) → Ideal`

Return the least common multiplier(lcm) of `self` and `other` as ideal.

This method simply calls the method `intersect`.

4.9.4.6 norm – norm

`norm(self)` → *rational.Rational*

Return the norm of `self`.

This method calls `self.number_field.integer_ring`.

4.9.4.7 isIntegral – Check integral

`isIntegral(self)` → *True/False*

Determine whether `self` is an integral ideal or not.

Examples

```
>>> M = module.Ideal([matrix.RingMatrix(2, 2, [1,0]+[0,2]), 2], F)
>>> print(M.inverse())
([-2, 0]+[0, 2], 1)
over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
 NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print(M * M.inverse())
([1, 0]+[0, 1], 1)
over
([Rational(1, 1), Rational(0, 1)]+[Rational(0, 1), Rational(1, 1)],
 NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> M.norm()
Rational(1, 2)
>>> M.isIntegral()
False
```

4.9.5 Ideal_with_generator - ideal with generator

Initialize (Constructor)

Ideal_with_generator(generator: list) → Ideal_with_generator

Create a new ideal given as a generator.

generator is a list of instances in **BasicAlgNumber**, which represent generators, over a same number field.

Attributes

generator : generators of the ideal

number_field : the number field over which generators are defined

Operations

operator	explanation
$M=N$	Return whether M and N are equal or not as module.
$c \text{ in } M$	Check whether some element of M equals c.
$M+N$	Return the sum of M and N as ideal with generators.
$M*N$	Return the product of M and N as ideal with generators.
$M**c$	Return M to c based on the ideal multiplication.
<code>repr(M)</code>	Return the repr string of the ideal M.
<code>str(M)</code>	Return the str string of the ideal M.

Examples

```
>>> F = algfield.NumberField([2,0,1])
>>> M_1 = module.Ideal_with_generator([
    F.createElement([[1,0], 2]), F.createElement([[0,1], 1])
])
>>> M_2 = module.Ideal_with_generator([
    F.createElement([[2,0], 3]), F.createElement([[0,5], 3])
])
>>> print(M_1)
[BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 2], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0, 1], 1], [2, 0, 1])]
>>> print(M_1 + M_2)
[BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 2], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0, 1], 1], [2, 0, 1]),
```

```

    BasicAlgNumber([[2, 0], 3], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0, 5], 3], [2, 0, 1]])
>>> print(M_1 * M_2)
[BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 3], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0, 5], 6], [2, 0, 1]),
BasicAlgNumber([[0, 2], 3], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[-10, 0], 3], [2, 0, 1])]
>>> print(M_1 ** 2)
[BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 4], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[0, 1], 2], [2, 0, 1]),
BasicAlgNumber([[0, 1], 2], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[-2, 0], 1], [2, 0, 1])]

```


Methods

4.9.5.1 copy - create copy

`copy(self) → Ideal_with_generator`

Create copy of `self`.

4.9.5.2 to_HNFRepresentation - change to ideal with HNF

`to_HNFRepresentation(self) → Ideal`

Transform `self` to the corresponding ideal as HNF(hermite normal form) representation.

4.9.5.3 twoElementRepresentation - Represent with two element

`twoElementRepresentation(self) → Ideal_with_generator`

Transform `self` to the corresponding ideal as HNF(hermite normal form) representation.

If `self` is not a prime ideal, this method is not efficient.

4.9.5.4 smallest_rational - a Z-generator in the rational field

`smallest_rational(self) → rational.Rational`

Return the **Z**-generator of intersection of the module `self` and the rational field.

This method calls **to_HNFRepresentation**.

4.9.5.5 inverse – inverse

`inverse(self) → Ideal`

Return the inverse ideal of `self`.

This method calls `to_HNFRepresentation`.

4.9.5.6 `norm` – `norm`

`norm(self) → rational.Rational`

Return the norm of `self`.

This method calls `to_HNFRepresentation`.

4.9.5.7 `intersect` - `intersection`

`intersect(self, other: Ideal_with_generator) → Ideal`

Return intersection of `self` and `other`.

This method calls `to_HNFRepresentation`.

4.9.5.8 `issubideal` – Check subideal

`issubideal(self, other: Ideal_with_generator) → Ideal`

Check `self` is subideal of `other`.

This method calls `to_HNFRepresentation`.

4.9.5.9 `issuperideal` – Check superideal

`issuperideal(self, other: Ideal_with_generator) → Ideal`

Check `self` is superideal of `other`.

This method calls `to_HNFRepresentation`.

Examples

```
>>> M = module.Ideal_with_generator([
F.createElement([[2,0], 3]), F.createElement([[0,2], 3]), F.createElement([[1,0], 3])
])
>>> print(M.to_HNFRepresentation())
([2, 0, 0, -4, 1, 0]+[0, 2, 2, 0, 0, 1], 3)
over
([1, 0]+[0, 1], NumberField([2, 0, 1]))
>>> print(M.twoElementRepresentation())
[BasicAlgNumber([[1, 0], 3], [2, 0, 1]), BasicAlgNumber([[3, 2], 3], [2, 0, 1])]
>>> M.norm()
Rational(1, 9)
```

4.10 permute – permutation (symmetric) group

- Classes
 - **Permute**
 - **ExPermute**
 - **PermGroup**

4.10.1 Permute – element of permutation group

Initialize (Constructor)

Permute(value: *list/tuple*, key: *list/tuple*) → **Permute**

Permute(val_key: *dict*) → **Permute**

Permute(value: *list/tuple*, key: *int*=None) → **Permute**

Create an element of a permutation group.

An instance will be generated with “normal” way. That is, we input a **key**, which is a list of (indexed) all elements from some set, and a **value**, which is a list of all permuted elements.

Normally, you input two lists (or tuples) **value** and **key** with same length. Or you can input **val_key** as a dict whose **values()** is a list “value” and **keys()** is a list “key” in the sense of above. Also, there are some short-cut for inputting **key**:

- If key is $[1, 2, \dots, N]$, you do not have to input **key**.
- If key is $[0, 1, \dots, N - 1]$, input 0 as **key**.
- If key equals the list arranged through **value** in ascending order, input 1.
- If key equals the list arranged through **value** in descending order, input -1 .

Attributes

key :
It expresses **key**.

data :
†It expresses indexed form of **value**.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>A==B</code>	Check equality for A's value and B's one and A's key and B's one.
<code>A*B</code>	right multiplication (that is, $A \circ B$ with normal mapping way)
<code>A/B</code>	division (that is, $A \circ B^{-1}$)
<code>A**B</code>	powering
<code>A.inverse()</code>	inverse
<code>A[c]</code>	the element of value corresponding to c in key
<code>A(lst)</code>	permute lst with A

Examples

```
>>> p1 = permute.Permute(['b','c','d','a','e'], ['a','b','c','d','e'])
>>> print(p1)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['b', 'c', 'd', 'a', 'e']
>>> p2 = permute.Permute([2, 3, 0, 1, 4], 0)
>>> print(p2)
[0, 1, 2, 3, 4] -> [2, 3, 0, 1, 4]
>>> p3 = permute.Permute(['c','a','b','e','d'], 1)
>>> print(p3)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['c', 'a', 'b', 'e', 'd']
>>> print(p1 * p3)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['d', 'b', 'c', 'e', 'a']
>>> print(p3 * p1)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['a', 'b', 'e', 'c', 'd']
>>> print(p1 ** 4)
['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e'] -> ['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']
>>> p1['d']
'a'
>>> p2([0, 1, 2, 3, 4])
[2, 3, 0, 1, 4]
```

Methods

4.10.1.1 setKey – change key

`setKey(self, key: list/tuple) → Permute`

Set other key.

key must be list or tuple with same length to **key**.

4.10.1.2 getValue – get “value”

`getValue(self) → list`

Return (not data) value of `self`.

4.10.1.3 getGroup – get PermGroup

`getGroup(self) → PermGroup`

Return **PermGroup** to which `self` belongs.

4.10.1.4 numbering – give the index

`numbering(self) → int`

Number `self` in the permutation group. (Slow method)

The numbering is made to fit the following inductive definition for dimension of the permutation group.

If numbering of $[\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_{n-2}, \sigma_{n-1}]$ on $(n-1)$ -dimension is k , numbering of $[\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_{n-2}, \sigma_{n-1}, n]$ on n -dimension is k and numbering of $[\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_{n-2}, n, \sigma_{n-1}]$ on n -dimension is $k + (n-1)!$, and so on. (See [Room of Points And Lines, part 2, section 15, paragraph 2 \(Japanese\)](#))

4.10.1.5 order – order of the element

`order(self) → int`

Return order as the element of group.

This method is faster than general group method.

4.10.1.6 ToTranspose – represent as transpositions

ToTranspose(self) → ExPermute

Represent **self** as a composition of transpositions.

Return the element of **ExPermute** with transpose (2-dimensional cyclic) type. It is recursive program, and it would take more time than the method **ToCyclic**.

4.10.1.7 ToCyclic – corresponding ExPermute element

ToCyclic(self) → ExPermute

Represent **self** as a composition of cyclic representations.

Return the element of **ExPermute**. †This method decomposes **self** into coprime cyclic permutations, so each cyclic is commutative.

4.10.1.8 sgn – sign of the permutation

sgn(self) → int

Return the sign of permutation group element.

If **self** is even permutation, that is, **self** can be written as a composition of an even number of transpositions, it returns 1. Otherwise, that is, for odd permutation, it returns -1.

4.10.1.9 types – type of cyclic representation

types(self) → list

Return cyclic type defined by each cyclic permutation element length.

4.10.1.10 ToMatrix – permutation matrix

ToMatrix(self) → **Matrix**

Return permutation matrix.

The row and column correspond to **key**. If **self** G satisfies $G[a] = b$, then (a, b) -element of the matrix is 1. Otherwise, the element is 0.

Examples

```
>>> p = Permute([2,3,1,5,4])
>>> p.numbering()
28
>>> p.order()
6
>>> p.ToTranspose()
[(4,5)(1,3)(1,2)](5)
>>> p.sgn()
-1
>>> p.ToCyclic()
[(1,2,3)(4,5)](5)
>>> p.types()
'(2,3)type'
>>> print(p.ToMatrix())
0 1 0 0 0
0 0 1 0 0
1 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 1
0 0 0 1 0
```

4.10.2 ExPermute – element of permutation group as cyclic representation

Initialize (Constructor)

ExPermute(dim: *int*, value: *list*, key: *list*=None) → **ExPermute**

Create an element of a permutation group.

An instance will be generated with “cyclic” way. That is, we input a **value**, which is a list of tuples and each tuple expresses a cyclic permutation. For example, $(\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_3, \dots, \sigma_k)$ is one-to-one mapping, $\sigma_1 \mapsto \sigma_2, \sigma_2 \mapsto \sigma_3, \dots, \sigma_k \mapsto \sigma_1$.

dim must be positive integer, that is, an instance of `int` or **Integer**. **key** should be a list whose length equals **dim**. Input a list of tuples whose elements are in **key** as **value**. Note that you can abbreviate **key** if **key** has the form $[1, 2, \dots, N]$. Also, you can input 0 as **key** if **key** has the form $[0, 1, \dots, N-1]$.

Attributes

dim :
It expresses **dim**.

key :
It expresses **key**.

data :
†It expresses indexed form of **value**.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Check equality for A’s value and B’s one and A’s key and B’s one.
A*B	right multiplication (that is, $A \circ B$ with normal mapping way)
A/B	division (that is, $A \circ B^{-1}$)
A**B	powering
A.inverse()	inverse
A[c]	the element of value corresponding to c in key
A(1st)	permute 1st with A
str(A)	simple representation. use simplify .
repr(A)	representation

Examples

```
>>> p1 = permute.ExPermute(5, [('a', 'b')], ['a','b','c','d','e'])
>>> print(p1)
[('a', 'b')] <['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']>
>>> p2 = permute.ExPermute(5, [(0, 2), (3, 4, 1)], 0)
>>> print(p2)
[(0, 2), (1, 3, 4)] <[0, 1, 2, 3, 4]>
>>> p3 = permute.ExPermute(5, [('b','c')], ['a','b','c','d','e'])
>>> print(p1 * p3)
[('a', 'b'), ('b', 'c')] <['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']>
>>> print(p3 * p1)
[('b', 'c'), ('a', 'b')] <['a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e']>
>>> p1['c']
'c'
>>> p2([0, 1, 2, 3, 4])
[2, 4, 0, 1, 3]
```

Methods

4.10.2.1 setKey – change key

`setKey(self, key: list) → ExPermute`

Set other key.

key must be a list whose length equals **dim**.

4.10.2.2 getValue – get “value”

`getValue(self) → list`

Return (not data) value of `self`.

4.10.2.3 getGroup – get PermGroup

`getGroup(self) → PermGroup`

Return **PermGroup** to which `self` belongs.

4.10.2.4 order – order of the element

`order(self) → int`

Return order as the element of group.

This method is faster than general group method.

4.10.2.5 ToNormal – represent as normal style

`ToNormal(self) → Permute`

Represent `self` as an instance of **Permute**.

4.10.2.6 simplify – use simple value

`simplify(self) → ExPermute`

Return the more simple cyclic element.

†This method uses **ToNormal** and **ToCyclic**.

4.10.2.7 sgn – sign of the permutation

`sgn(self) → int`

Return the sign of permutation group element.

If **self** is even permutation, that is, **self** can be written as a composition of an even number of transpositions, it returns 1. Otherwise, that is, for odd permutation, it returns -1 .

Examples

```
>>> p = permute.ExPermute(5, [(1, 2, 3), (4, 5)])
>>> p.order()
6
>>> print(p.ToNormal())
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5] -> [2, 3, 1, 5, 4]
>>> p * p
[(1, 2, 3), (4, 5), (1, 2, 3), (4, 5)] <[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]>
>>> (p * p).simplify()
[(1, 3, 2)] <[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]>
```

4.10.3 PermGroup – permutation group

Initialize (Constructor)

PermGroup(key: *int*) → PermGroup

PermGroup(key: *list/tuple*) → PermGroup

Create a permutation group.

Normally, input list as **key**. If you input some integer N , **key** is set as $[1, 2, \dots, N]$.

Attributes

key :
It expresses **key**.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Check equality for A's value and B's one and A's key and B's one.
card(A)	same as grouporder
str(A)	simple representation
repr(A)	representation

Examples

```
>>> p1 = permute.PermGroup(['a','b','c','d','e'])
>>> print(p1)
['a','b','c','d','e']
>>> card(p1)
120
```

Methods

4.10.3.1 createElement – create an element from seed

`createElement(self, seed: list/tuple/dict) → Permute`
`createElement(self, seed: list) → ExPermute`

Create new element in `self`.

`seed` must be the form of “value” on **Permute** or **ExPermute**

4.10.3.2 identity – group identity

`identity(self) → Permute`

Return the identity of `self` as normal type.

For cyclic type, use **identity_c**.

4.10.3.3 identity_c – group identity as cyclic type

`identity_c(self) → ExPermute`

Return permutation group identity as cyclic type.

For normal type, use **identity**.

4.10.3.4 grouporder – order as group

`grouporder(self) → int`

Compute the order of `self` as group.

4.10.3.5 randElement – random permute element

`randElement(self) → Permute`

Create random new element as normal type in `self`.

Examples

```
>>> p = permute.PermGroup(5)
>>> print(p.createElement([3, 4, 5, 1, 2]))
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5] -> [3, 4, 5, 1, 2]
>>> print(p.createElement([(1, 2), (3, 4)]))
[(1, 2), (3, 4)] <[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]>
>>> print(p.identity())
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5] -> [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
>>> print(p.identity_c())
[] <[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]>
>>> p.grouporder()
120
>>> print(p.randElement())
[1, 2, 3, 4, 5] -> [3, 4, 5, 2, 1]
```


4.11 rational – integer and rational number

rational module provides integer and rational numbers, as class Rational, Integer, RationalField, and IntegerRing.

- Classes
 - **Integer**
 - **IntegerRing**
 - **Rational**
 - **RationalField**

This module also provides following constants:

theIntegerRing :

theIntegerRing is represents the ring of rational integers. An instance of **IntegerRing**.

theRationalField :

theRationalField is represents the field of rational numbers. An instance of **RationalField**.

4.11.1 Integer – integer

Integer is a class of integer. Since 'int' do not return rational for division, it is needed to create a new class.

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRingElement** and int.

Initialize (Constructor)

Integer(integer: *integer*) → *Integer*

Construct a Integer object. If argument is omitted, the value becomes 0.

Methods

4.11.1.1 `getRing` – get ring object

`getRing(self) → IntegerRing`

Return an `IntegerRing` object.

4.11.1.2 `actAdditive` – addition of binary addition chain

`actAdditive(self, other: integer) → Integer`

Act on `other` additively, i.e. `n` is expanded to `n` time additions of `other`. Naively, it is:

```
return sum([+other for _ in range(self)])
```

but, here we use a binary addition chain.

4.11.1.3 `actMultiplicative` – multiplication of binary addition chain

`actMultiplicative(self, other: integer) → Integer`

Act on `other` multiplicatively, i.e. `n` is expanded to `n` time multiplications of `other`. Naively, it is:

```
return reduce(lambda x,y: x*y, [+other for _ in range(self)])
```

but, here we use a binary addition chain.

4.11.2 IntegerRing – integer ring

The class is for the ring of rational integers.

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRing**.

Initialize (Constructor)

IntegerRing() $\rightarrow$ *IntegerRing*

Create an instance of IntegerRing. You may not want to create an instance, since there is already theIntegerRing.

Attributes

zero :

It expresses the additive unit 0. (read only)

one :

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
x in Z	return whether an element is in or not.
repr(Z)	return representation string.
str(Z)	return string.

Methods

4.11.2.1 createElement – create Integer object

createElement(self, seed: *integer*) → *Integer*

Return an Integer object with **seed**.
seed must be int or rational.Integer.

4.11.2.2 gcd – greatest common divisor

gcd(self, n: *integer*, m: *integer*) → *Integer*

Return the greatest common divisor of given 2 integers.

4.11.2.3 extgcd – extended GCD

extgcd(self, n: *integer*, m: *integer*) → *Integer*

Return a tuple (u, v, d) ; they are the greatest common divisor d of two given integers **n** and **m** and u, v such that $d = nu + mv$.

4.11.2.4 lcm – lowest common multiplier

lcm(self, n: *integer*, m: *integer*) → *Integer*

Return the lowest common multiple of given 2 integers. If both are zero, it raises an exception.

4.11.2.5 getQuotientField – get rational field object

getQuotientField(self) → *RationalField*

Return the rational field (**RationalField**).

4.11.2.6 issubring – subring test

issubring(self, other: **Ring**) → *bool*

Report whether another ring contains the integer ring as subring.

If other is also the integer ring, the output is True. In other cases it depends on the implementation of another ring's `issuperring` method.

4.11.2.7 `issuperring` – superring test

`issuperring(self, other: Ring) → bool`

Report whether the integer ring contains another ring as subring.

If other is also the integer ring, the output is True. In other cases it depends on the implementation of another ring's `issubring` method.

4.11.3 Rational – rational number

The class of rational numbers.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
Rational(numerator: numbers, denominator: numbers=1)  
    → Integer
```

Construct a rational number from:

- integers,
- float, or
- Rational.

Other objects can be converted if they have `toRational` methods. Otherwise raise `TypeError`.

Methods

4.11.3.1 `getRing` – get ring object

`getRing(self) → RationalField`

Return a RationalField object.

4.11.3.2 `decimalString` – represent decimal

`decimalString(self, N: integer) → string`

Return a string of the number to N decimal places.

4.11.3.3 `expand` – continued-fraction representation

`expand(self, base: integer, limit: integer) → string`

Return the nearest rational number whose denominator is a power of `base` and at most `limit` if `base` is positive integer.

Otherwise, i.e. `base=0`, returns the nearest rational number whose denominator is at most `limit`.

`base` must be non-negative integer.

4.11.4 RationalField – the rational field

RationalField is a class of field of rationals. The class has the single instance **theRationalField**.

This class is a subclass of **QuotientField**.

Initialize (Constructor)

RationalField() $\rightarrow$ *RationalField*

Create an instance of RationalField. You may not want to create an instance, since there is already theRationalField.

Attributes

zero :

It expresses the additive unit 0, namely Rational(0, 1). (read only)

one :

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1, namely Rational(1, 1). (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
x in Q	return whether an element is in or not.
str(Q)	return string.

Methods

4.11.4.1 createElement – create Rational object

```
createElement(self, numerator: integer or Rational, denominator: integer=1 )  
    → Rational
```

Create a Rational object.

4.11.4.2 classNumber – get class number

```
classNumber(self) → integer
```

Return 1, since the class number of the rational field is one.

4.11.4.3 getQuotientField – get rational field object

```
getQuotientField(self) → RationalField
```

Return the rational field itself.

4.11.4.4 issubring – subring test

```
issubring(self, other: Ring) → bool
```

Report whether another ring contains the rational field as subring.

If other is also the rational field, the output is True. In other cases it depends on the implementation of another ring's issuperring method.

4.11.4.5 issuperring – superring test

```
issuperring(self, other: Ring) → bool
```

Report whether the rational field contains another ring as subring.

If other is also the rational field, the output is True. In other cases it depends on the implementation of another ring's issubring method.

4.12 real – real numbers and its functions

The module `real` provides arbitrary precision real numbers and their utilities. The functions provided are corresponding to the `math` standard module.

- **Classes**

- `RealField`
- `Real`
- `†Constant`
- `†ExponentialPowerSeries`
- `†AbsoluteError`
- `†RelativeError`

- **Functions**

- `exp`
- `sqrt`
- `log`
- `log1piter`
- `piGaussLegendre`
- `eContinuedFraction`
- `floor`
- `ceil`
- `trunc`
- `sin`
- `cos`
- `tan`
- `sinh`
- `cosh`
- `tanh`
- `asin`
- `acos`
- `atan`
- `atan2`
- `hypot`
- `pow`
- `degrees`
- `radians`

- **fabs**
- **fmod**
- **frexp**
- **ldexp**
- **EulerTransform**

This module also provides following constants:

- e** :
This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).
- pi** :
This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).
- Log2** :
This constant is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).
- theRealField** :
theRealField is the instance of **RealField**.

4.12.1 RealField – field of real numbers

The class is for the field of real numbers. The class has the single instance **theRealField**.

This class is a subclass of **Field**.

Initialize (Constructor)

RealField() $\rightarrow$ *RealField*

Create an instance of RealField. You may not want to create an instance, since there is already **theRealField**.

Attributes

zero :

It expresses the additive unit 0. (read only)

one :

It expresses the multiplicative unit 1. (read only)

Operations

operator	explanation
x in R	membership test; return whether an element is in or not.
repr(R)	return representation string.
str(R)	return string.

Methods

4.12.1.1 `getCharacteristic` – get characteristic

`getCharacteristic(self) → integer`

Return the characteristic, zero.

4.12.1.2 `issubring` – subring test

`issubring(self, aRing: Ring) → bool`

Report whether another ring contains the real field as subring.

4.12.1.3 `issuperring` – superring test

`issuperring(self, aRing: Ring) → bool`

Report whether the real field contains another ring as subring.

4.12.2 Real – a Real number

Real is a class of real number. This class is only for consistency for other **Ring** object.

This class is a subclass of **CommutativeRingElement**.

All implemented operators in this class are delegated to Float type.

Initialize (Constructor)

Real(value: *number*) $\rightarrow$ *Real*

Construct a Real object.

value must be int, Float or **Rational**.

Methods

4.12.2.1 `getRing` – get ring object

`getRing(self)` $\rightarrow$ *RealField*

Return the real field instance.

4.12.3 Constant – real number with error correction

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.4 ExponentialPowerSeries – exponential power series

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.5 AbsoluteError – absolute error

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.6 RelativeError – relative error

This class is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.7 exp(function) – exponential value

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.8 sqrt(function) – square root

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.9 log(function) – logarithm

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.10 log1piter(function) – iterator of $\log(1+x)$

log1piter(xx: *number*) → *iterator*

Return iterator for $\log(1+x)$.

4.12.11 piGaussLegendre(function) – pi by Gauss-Legendre

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.12 eContinuedFraction(function) – Napier’s Constant by continued fraction expansion

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.13 floor(function) – floor the number

floor(*x*: *number*) → *integer*

Return the biggest integer not more than *x*.

4.12.14 ceil(function) – ceil the number

ceil(*x*: *number*) → *integer*

Return the smallest integer not less than *x*.

4.12.15 trunc(function) – round-off the number

trunc(*x*: *number*) → *integer*

Return the number of rounded off *x*.

4.12.16 sin(function) – sine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.17 cos(function) – cosine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.18 tan(function) – tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.19 sinh(function) – hyperbolic sine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.20 cosh(function) – hyperbolic cosine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.21 tanh(function) – hyperbolic tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.22 `asin(function)` – arc sine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.23 `acos(function)` – arc cosine function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.24 `atan(function)` – arc tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.25 `atan2(function)` – arc tangent function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.26 `hypot(function)` – Euclidean distance function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.27 `pow(function)` – power function

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.28 `degrees(function)` – convert angle to degree

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.29 `radians(function)` – convert angle to radian

This function is obsolete (Ver 1.1.0).

4.12.30 `fabs(function)` – absolute value

`fabs(x: number) → number`

Return absolute value of `x`

4.12.31 `fmod(function)` – modulo function over real

`fmod(x: number, y: number) → number`

Return $x - ny$, where `n` is the quotient of `x` / `y`, rounded towards zero to an integer.

4.12.32 frexp(function) – expression with base and binary exponent

frexp(*x*: *number*) → (*m*,*e*)

Return a tuple (*m*,*e*), where $x = m \times 2^e$, $1/2 \leq \text{abs}(m) < 1$ and *e* is an integer.

†This function is provided as the counter-part of `math.frexp`, but it might not be useful.

4.12.33 ldexp(function) – construct number from base and binary exponent

ldexp(*x*: *number*, *i*: *number*) → *number*

Return $x \times 2^i$.

4.12.34 EulerTransform(function) – iterator yields terms of Euler transform

EulerTransform(*iterator*: *iterator*) → *iterator*

Return an iterator which yields terms of Euler transform of the given *iterator*.

†

4.13 ring – for ring object

- **Classes**
 - **Ring**
 - **CommutativeRing**
 - **Field**
 - **QuotientField**
 - **RingElement**
 - **CommutativeRingElement**
 - **FieldElement**
 - **QuotientFieldElement**
 - **Ideal**
 - **ResidueClassRing**
 - **ResidueClass**
 - **CommutativeRingProperties**
- **Functions**
 - **getRingInstance**
 - **getRing**
 - **inverse**
 - **exact_division**

4.13.1 †Ring – abstract ring

Ring is an abstract class which expresses that the derived classes are (in mathematical meaning) rings.

Definition of ring (in mathematical meaning) is as follows: Ring is a structure with addition and multiplication. It is an abelian group with addition, and a monoid with multiplication. The multiplication obeys the distributive law.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Attributes

zero additive unit

one multiplicative unit

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Return whether M and N are equal or not.

Methods

4.13.1.1 createElement – create an element

createElement(self, seed: *(undefined)*) → *RingElement*

Return an element of the ring with seed.

This is an abstract method.

4.13.1.2 getCharacteristic – characteristic as ring

getCharacteristic(self) → *integer*

Return the characteristic of the ring.

The Characteristic of a ring is the smallest positive integer n s.t. $na = 0$ for any element a of the ring, or 0 if there is no such natural number.
This is an abstract method.

4.13.1.3 issubring – check subring

issubring(self, other: *RingElement*) → *True/False*

Report whether another ring contains the ring as a subring.

This is an abstract method.

4.13.1.4 issuperring – check superring

issuperring(self, other: *RingElement*) → *True/False*

Report whether the ring is a superring of another ring.

This is an abstract method.

4.13.1.5 getCommonSuperring – get common ring

`getCommonSuperring(self, other: RingElement) → RingElement`

Return common super ring of self and another ring.

This method uses **issubring**, **issuperring**.

4.13.2 †CommutativeRing – abstract commutative ring

CommutativeRing is an abstract subclass of **Ring** whose multiplication is commutative.

CommutativeRing is subclass of **Ring**.

There are some properties of commutative rings, algorithms should be chosen accordingly. To express such properties, there is a class **CommutativeRingProperties**.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Attributes

properties an instance of **CommutativeRingProperties**

Methods

4.13.2.1 getQuotientField – create quotient field

`getQuotientField(self)` → *QuotientField*

Return the quotient field of the ring.

This is an abstract method.
If quotient field of `self` is not available, it should raise exception.

4.13.2.2 isdomain – check domain

`isdomain(self)` → *True/False/None*

Return True if the ring is actually a domain, False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.3 isnoetherian – check Noetherian domain

`isnoetherian(self)` → *True/False/None*

Return True if the ring is actually a Noetherian domain, False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.4 isufd – check UFD

`isufd(self)` → *True/False/None*

Return True if the ring is actually a unique factorization domain (UFD), False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.5 ispid – check PID

`ispid(self)` → *True/False/None*

Return True if the ring is actually a principal ideal domain (PID), False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.6 iseuclidean – check Euclidean domain

`iseuclidean(self)` → *True/False/None*

Return True if the ring is actually a Euclidean domain, False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.7 isfield – check field

`isfield(self)` → *True/False/None*

Return True if the ring is actually a field, False if not, or None if uncertain.

4.13.2.8 registerModuleAction – register action as ring

`registerModuleAction(self, action_ring: RingElement, action: function)`
→ (*None*)

Register a ring `action_ring`, which act on the ring through `action` so the ring be an `action_ring` module.

See **hasaction**, **getaction**.

4.13.2.9 hasaction – check if the action has

`hasaction(self, action_ring: RingElement)` → *True/False*

Return True if `action_ring` is registered to provide action.

See **registerModuleAction**, **getaction**.

4.13.2.10 getaction – get the registered action

`hasaction(self, action_ring: RingElement)` → *function*

Return the registered action for `action_ring`.

See **registerModuleAction**, **hasaction**.

4.13.3 †Field – abstract field

Field is an abstract class which expresses that the derived classes are (in mathematical meaning) fields, i.e., a commutative ring whose multiplicative monoid is a group.

Field is subclass of **CommutativeRing**. **getQuotientField** and **isfield** are not abstract (trivial methods).

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Methods

4.13.3.1 gcd – gcd

`gcd(self, a: FieldElement, b: FieldElement) → FieldElement`

Return the greatest common divisor of `a` and `b`.

A field is trivially a UFD and should provide `gcd`. If we can implement an algorithm for computing `gcd` in an Euclidean domain, we should provide the method corresponding to the algorithm.

4.13.4 †QuotientField – abstract quotient field

QuotientField is an abstract class which expresses that the derived classes are (in mathematical meaning) quotient fields.

self is the quotient field of **domain**.

QuotientField is subclass of **Field**.

In the initialize step, it registers trivial action named as baseaction; i.e. it expresses that an element of a domain acts an element of the quotient field by using the multiplication in the domain.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Attributes

basedomain domain which generates the quotient field **self**

4.13.5 †RingElement – abstract element of ring

RingElement is an abstract class for elements of rings.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	equality (abstract)

Methods

4.13.5.1 `getRing` – `getRing`

`getRing(self) → Ring`

Return an object of a subclass of `Ring`, to which the element belongs.

This is an abstract method.

4.13.6 †CommutativeRingElement – abstract element of commutative ring

CommutativeRingElement is an abstract class for elements of commutative rings.

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

Methods

4.13.6.1 `mul_module_action` – apply a module action

`mul_module_action(self, other: RingElement) → (undefined)`

Return the result of a module action. `other` must be in one of the action rings of `self`'s ring.

This method uses `getRing`, `CommutativeRing` and `getaction`. We should consider that the method is abstract.

4.13.6.2 `exact_division` – division exactly

`exact_division(self, other: CommutativeRingElement)`
`→ CommutativeRingElement`

In UFD, if `other` divides `self`, return the quotient as a UFD element.

The main difference with `/` is that `/` may return the quotient as an element of quotient field.

Simple cases:

- in a Euclidean domain, if remainder of euclidean division is zero, the division `//` is exact.
- in a field, there's no difference with `/`.

If `other` doesn't divide `self`, raise `ValueError`. Though `__divmod__` can be used automatically, we should consider that the method is abstract.

4.13.7 †FieldElement – abstract element of field

FieldElement is an abstract class for elements of fields.

FieldElement is subclass of **CommutativeRingElement**. **exact_division** are not abstract (trivial methods).

This class is abstract and cannot be instantiated.

4.13.8 †QuotientFieldElement – abstract element of quotient field

QuotientFieldElement class is an abstract class to be used as a super class of concrete quotient field element classes.

QuotientFieldElement is subclass of **FieldElement**.
`self` expresses $\frac{\text{numerator}}{\text{denominator}}$ in the quotient field.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated.
`denominator` should not be 0.

Attributes

numerator numerator of `self`

denominator denominator of `self`

Operations

operator	explanation
A+B	addition
A-B	subtraction
A*B	multiplication
A**B	powering
A/B	division
-A	sign reversion (additive inversion)
inverse(A)	multiplicative inversion
A==B	equality

4.13.9 †Ideal – abstract ideal

Ideal class is an abstract class to represent the finitely generated ideals.

†Because the finitely-generatedness is not a restriction for Noetherian rings and in the most cases only Noetherian rings are used, it is general enough.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated.
generators must be an element of the **aring** or a list of elements of the **aring**.
If **generators** is an element of the **aring**, we consider **self** is the principal ideal generated by **generators**.

Attributes

ring the ring belonged to by **self**

generators generators of the ideal **self**

Operations

operator	explanation
I+J	addition $\{i + j \mid i \in I, j \in J\}$
I*J	multiplication $IJ = \{\sum_{i,j} ij \mid i \in I, j \in J\}$
I==J	equality
e in I	For e in the ring, to which the ideal I belongs.

Methods

4.13.9.1 `issubset` – check subset

`issubset(self, other: Ideal) → True/False`

Report whether another ideal contains this ideal.

We should consider that the method is abstract.

4.13.9.2 `issuperset` – check superset

`issuperset(self, other: Ideal) → True/False`

Report whether this ideal contains another ideal.

We should consider that the method is abstract.

4.13.9.3 `reduce` – reduction with the ideal

`issuperset(self, other: Ideal) → True/False`

Reduce an element with the ideal to simpler representative.

This method is abstract.

4.13.10 †ResidueClassRing – abstract residue class ring

Initialize (Constructor)

```
ResidueClassRing(ring: CommutativeRing, ideal: Ideal)  
→ ResidueClassRing
```

A residue class ring R/I , where R is a commutative ring and I is its ideal.

ResidueClassRing is subclass of **CommutativeRing**.
one, **zero** are not abstract (trivial methods).

Because we assume that **ring** is Noetherian, so is **ring**.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated.
ring should be an instance of **CommutativeRing**, and **ideal** must be an instance of **Ideal**, whose **ring** attribute points the same ring with the given **ring**.

Attributes

ring the base ring R

ideal the ideal I

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	equality
e in A	report whether e is in the residue ring self .

4.13.11 †ResidueClass – abstract an element of residue class ring

Initialize (Constructor)

```
ResidueClass(x: CommutativeRingElement, ideal: Ideal)  
    → ResidueClass
```

Element of residue class ring $x + I$, where I is the modulus ideal and x is a representative element.

ResidueClass is subclass of **CommutativeRingElement**.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated.
`ideal` corresponds to the ideal I .

Operations

These operations uses **reduce**.

operator	explanation
x+y	addition
x-y	subtraction
x*y	multiplication
A==B	equality

4.13.12 †CommutativeRingProperties – properties for CommutativeRingProperties

Initialize (Constructor)

CommutativeRingProperties((None)) → CommutativeRingProperties

Boolean properties of ring.

Each property can have one of three values; *True*, *False*, or *None*. Of course *True* is true and *False* is false, and *None* means that the property is not set neither directly nor indirectly.

CommutativeRingProperties class treats

- Euclidean (Euclidean domain),
- PID (Principal Ideal Domain),
- UFD (Unique Factorization Domain),
- Noetherian (Noetherian ring (domain)),
- field (Field)

Methods

4.13.12.1 isfield – check field

`isfield(self) → True/False/None`

Return True/False according to the field flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.2 setIsfield – set field

`isfield(self, value: True/False) → (None)`

Set True/False value to the field flag.
Propagation:

- True → euclidean

4.13.12.3 iseclidean – check euclidean

`iseclidean(self) → True/False/None`

Return True/False according to the euclidean flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.4 setIseclidean – set euclidean

`isfield(self, value: True/False) → (None)`

Set True/False value to the euclidean flag.
Propagation:

- True → PID
- False → field

4.13.12.5 ispid – check PID

ispid(self) → *True/False/None*

Return True/False according to the PID flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.6 setIspid – set PID

ispid(self, value: *True/False*) → (*None*)

Set True/False value to the euclidean flag.
Propagation:

- True → UFD, Noetherian
- False → euclidean

4.13.12.7 isufd – check UFD

isufd(self) → *True/False/None*

Return True/False according to the UFD flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.8 setIsufd – set UFD

isufd(self, value: *True/False*) → (*None*)

Set True/False value to the UFD flag.
Propagation:

- True → domain

- False $\rightarrow$ PID

4.13.12.9 isnoetherian – check Noetherian

isnoetherian(self) $\rightarrow$ *True/False/None*

Return True/False according to the Noetherian flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.10 setIsnoetherian – set Noetherian

isnoetherian(self, value: *True/False*) $\rightarrow$ (*None*)

Set True/False value to the Noetherian flag.
Propagation:

- True $\rightarrow$ domain
- False $\rightarrow$ PID

4.13.12.11 isdomain – check domain

isdomain(self) $\rightarrow$ *True/False/None*

Return True/False according to the domain flag value being set, otherwise return None.

4.13.12.12 setIsdomain – set domain

isdomain(self, value: *True/False*) $\rightarrow$ (*None*)

Set True/False value to the domain flag.
Propagation:

- False $\rightarrow$ UFD, Noetherian

4.13.13 `getRingInstance(function)`

`getRingInstance(obj: RingElement) → RingElement`

Return a `RingElement` instance which equals `obj`.

Mainly for python built-in objects such as `int` or `float`.

4.13.14 `getRing(function)`

`getRing(obj: RingElement) → Ring`

Return a ring to which `obj` belongs.

Mainly for python built-in objects such as `int` or `float`.

4.13.15 `inverse(function)`

`inverse(obj: CommutativeRingElement) → QuotientFieldElement`

Return the inverse of `obj`. The inverse can be in the quotient field, if the `obj` is an element of non-field domain.

Mainly for python built-in objects such as `int` or `float`.

4.13.16 `exact_division(function)`

`exact_division(self: RingElement, other: RingElement)
→ RingElement`

Return the division of `self` by `other` if the division is exact.

Mainly for python built-in objects such as `int` or `float`.

Examples

```
>>> print(ring.getRing(3))  
Z
```

```
>>> print(ring.exact_division(6, 3))  
2
```


4.14 vector – vector object and arithmetic

- **Classes**
 - **Vector**
- **Functions**
 - **innerProduct**

This module provides an exception class.

VectorSizeError : Report vector size is invalid. (Mainly for operations with two vectors.)

4.14.1 Vector – vector class

Vector is a class for vector.

Initialize (Constructor)

Vector(*compo: list*) $\rightarrow$ *Vector*

Create Vector object from *compo*. *compo* must be a list of elements which are an integer or an instance of **RingElement**.

Attributes

compo :

It expresses component of vector.

Operations

Note that index is 1-origin, which is standard in mathematics field.

operator	explanation
u+v	Vector sum.
u-v	Vector subtraction.
A*v	Multiplication vector with matrix
a*v	or scalar multiplication.
v//a	Scalar division.
v%n	Reduction each elements of compo
-v	element negation.
u==v	equality.
u!=v	inequality.
v[i]	Return the coefficient of i-th element of Vector.
v[i] = c	Replace the coefficient of i-th element of Vector by c.
len(v)	return length of compo .
repr(v)	return representation string.
str(v)	return string of compo .

Examples

```
>>> A = vector.Vector([1, 2])
>>> A
Vector([1, 2])
>>> A.compo
[1, 2]
```

```
>>> B = vector.Vector([2, 1])
>>> A + B
Vector([3, 3])
>>> A % 2
Vector([1, 0])
>>> A[1]
1
>>> len(B)
2
```

Methods

4.14.1.1 copy – copy itself

`copy(self) → Vector`

Return copy of `self`.

4.14.1.2 set – set other compo

`set(self, compo: list) → (None)`

Substitute **compo** with `compo`.

4.14.1.3 indexOfNoneZero – first non-zero coordinate

`indexOfNoneZero(self) → integer`

Return the first index of non-zero element of `self.compo`.

†Raise `ValueError` if all elements of **compo** are zero.

4.14.1.4 toMatrix – convert to Matrix object

`toMatrix(self, as_column: bool=False) → Matrix`

Return **Matrix** object using **createMatrix** function.

If `as_column` is `True`, create the column matrix with `self`. Otherwise, create the row matrix.

Examples

```
>>> A = vector.Vector([0, 4, 5])
>>> A.indexOfNoneZero()
2
>>> print(A.toMatrix())
0 4 5
>>> print(A.toMatrix())
```

0
4
5

4.14.2 innerProduct(function) – inner product

innerProduct(bra: *Vector*, ket: *Vector*) → *RingElement*

Return the inner product of **bra** and **ket**.

The function supports Hermitian inner product for elements in the complex number field.

†Note that the returned value depends on type of elements.

Examples

```
>>> A = vector.Vector([1, 2, 3])
>>> B = vector.Vector([2, 1, 0])
>>> vector.innerProduct(A, B)
4
>>> C = vector.Vector([1+1j, 2+2j, 3+3j])
>>> vector.innerProduct(C, C)
(28+0j)
```

4.15 factor.ecm – ECM factorization

This module has curve type constants:

S : aka SUYAMA. Suyama’s parameter selection strategy.

B : aka BERNSTEIN. Bernstein’s parameter selection strategy.

A1 : aka ASUNCION1. Asuncion’s parameter selection strategy variant 1.

A2 : aka ASUNCION2. ditto 2.

A3 : aka ASUNCION3. ditto 3.

A4 : aka ASUNCION4. ditto 4.

A5 : aka ASUNCION5. ditto 5.

N3 : aka NAKAMURA. Nakamura’s parameter selection strategy.

See J.S.Asuncion’s master thesis [11] for details of each family.

4.15.1 ecm – elliptic curve method

```
ecm(n: integer, curve_type: curvetype=A1, incs: integer=3, trials:
integer=20, verbose: bool=False)
    → integer
```

Find a factor of n by elliptic curve method.

If it cannot find non-trivial factor of n , then it returns 1. For efficiency, prime check and power check of n are done at start.

`curve_type` should be chosen from **curvetype** constants above.

The second optional argument `incs` specifies a number of changes of bounds. The function repeats factorization trials several times changing curves with a fixed bounds.

Optional argument `trials` can control how quickly move on to the next higher bounds.

`verbose` toggles verbosity.

4.16 factor.find – find a factor

All methods in this module return one of the factors of given integer. If it fails to find a non-trivial factor, it returns 1. Note that 1 is a factor anyway.

`verbose` boolean flag can be specified for verbose reports. To receive these messages, you have to prepare a logger (see [logging](#)).

4.16.1 trialDivision – trial division

trialDivision(*n*: *integer*, ****options**) → *integer*

Return a factor of *n* by trial divisions.

options can be either one of the following:

1. **start** and **stop** as range parameters. In addition to these, **step** is also available.
2. **iterator** as an iterator of primes.

If **options** is not given, the function divides *n* by primes from 2 to the floor of the square root of *n* until a non-trivial factor is found.

`verbose` boolean flag can be specified for verbose reports.

4.16.2 pmom – $p - 1$ method

pmom(*n*: *integer*, ****options**) → *integer*

Return a factor of *n* by the $p - 1$ method.

The function tries to find a non-trivial factor of *n* using Algorithm 8.8.2 ($p - 1$ first stage) of [13]. In the case of $n = 2^i$, the function will not terminate. Due to the nature of the method, the method may return the trivial factor only.

`verbose` Boolean flag can be specified for verbose reports, though it is not so verbose indeed.

4.16.3 rhomethod – ρ method

rhomethod(*n*: *integer*, ****options**) → *integer*

Return a factor of *n* by Pollard's ρ method.

The implementation refers the explanation in [15]. Due to the nature of the

method, a factorization may return the trivial factor only.

`verbose` Boolean flag can be specified for verbose reports.

Examples

```
>>> factor.find.trialDivision(1001)
7
>>> factor.find.trialDivision(1001, start=10, stop=32)
11
>>> factor.find.pmom(1001)
91
>>> import logging
>>> logging.basicConfig()
>>> factor.find.rhomethod(1001, verbose=True)
INFO:nzmath.factor.find:887 748
13
```

4.17 factor.methods – factoring methods

It uses methods of **factor.find** module or some heavier methods of related modules to find a factor. Also, classes of **factor.util** module is used to track the factorization process. **options** are normally passed to the underlying function without modification.

This module uses the following type:

factorlist :

factorlist is a list which consists of pairs (**base**, **index**). Each pair means $\text{base}^{\text{index}}$. The product of these terms expresses prime factorization.

4.17.1 factor – easiest way to factor

```
factor(n: integer, method: string='default', **options )  
→ factorlist
```

Factor the given positive integer **n**.

By default, use several methods internally.

The optional argument **method** can be:

- 'ecm': use elliptic curve method.
- 'mpqs': use MPQS method.
- 'pmom': use $p - 1$ method.
- 'rhomethod': use Pollard's ρ method.
- 'trialDivision': use trial division.

(†In fact, the initial letter of method name suffices to specify.)

4.17.2 ecm – elliptic curve method

```
ecm(n: integer, **options ) → factorlist
```

Factor the given integer **n** by elliptic curve method.

(See **ecm** of **factor.ecm** module.)

4.17.3 mpqs – multi-polynomial quadratic sieve method

```
mpqs(n: integer, **options) → factorlist
```

Factor the given integer `n` by multi-polynomial quadratic sieve method.

(See `mpqsfind` of `factor.mpqs` module.)

4.17.4 pmom – $p - 1$ method

```
pmom(n: integer, **options) → factorlist
```

Factor the given integer `n` by $p - 1$ method.

The method may fail unless `n` has an appropriate factor for the method.
(See `pmom` of `factor.find` module.)

4.17.5 rhomethod – ρ method

```
rhomethod(n: integer, **options) → factorlist
```

Factor the given integer `n` by Pollard's ρ method.

The method is a probabilistic method, possibly fails in factorizations.
(See `rhomethod` of `factor.find` module.)

4.17.6 trialDivision – trial division

```
trialDivision(n: integer, **options) → factorlist
```

Factor the given integer `n` by trial division.

`options` for the trial sequence can be either:

1. `start` and `stop` as range parameters.
2. `iterator` as an iterator of primes.
3. `eratosthenes` as an upper bound to make prime sequence by sieve.

If none of the options above are given, the function divides `n` by primes from 2 to the floor of the square root of `n` until a non-trivial factor is found.
(See `trialDivision` of `factor.find` module.)

Examples

```
>>> factor.methods.factor(10001)
[(73, 1), (137, 1)]
>>> factor.methods.ecm(1000001)
[(101, 1), (9901, 1)]
```

4.18 factor.misc – miscellaneous functions related factoring

- Functions
 - `allDivisors`
 - `primeDivisors`
 - `primePowerTest`
 - `squarePart`
 - `countDivisors`
 - `sumDivisors`
- Classes
 - `FactoredInteger`

4.18.1 allDivisors – all divisors

`allDivisors(n: integer) → list`

Return all factors dividing `n` as a list.

The integer `n` and factors are all positive. In order to decide factors, `FactoredInteger` is applied.

4.18.2 primeDivisors – prime divisors

`primeDivisors(n: integer) → list`

Return all prime factors dividing `n` as a list.

The integer `n` is positive. In order to decide prime factors, `FactoredInteger` is applied.

4.18.3 primePowerTest – prime power test

`primePowerTest(n: integer) → (integer, integer)`

Judge whether `n` is of the form p^k with a prime p and a positive integer k or not. If it is true, then (p, k) will be returned, otherwise $(n, 0)$.

This function is based on Algo. 1.7.5 in [13].

The integer `n` is positive.

4.18.4 squarePart – square part

squarePart(*n*: *integer*, *asfactored*: *bool*=False) → *integer*

Return the largest integer whose square divides *n*.

If an optional argument **asfactored** is True, then the result is also a **FactoredInteger** object. (default is False)

The integer *n* is positive. In order to decide the square part, **FactoredInteger** is applied.

4.18.5 countDivisors – the number of positive divisors

countDivisors(*a*: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the number of positive divisors of *a*.

This function is usually known as τ -function. It is the same as **sigma**(0, *a*).

The integer *a* is positive. The result is by **FactoredInteger**.

4.18.6 sumDivisors – the sum of positive divisors

sumDivisors(*a*: *integer*) → *integer*

Return the sum of positive divisors of *a*.

This function is usually known as σ -function. It is the same as **sigma**(1, *a*).

The integer *a* is positive. The result is by **FactoredInteger**.

Examples

```
>>> factor.misc.allDivisors(1001)
[1, 7, 11, 13, 77, 91, 143, 1001]
>>> factor.misc.primeDivisors(100)
[2, 5]
>>> factor.misc.primePowerTest(128)
(2, 7)
>>> factor.misc.squarePart(128)
8
```

4.18.7 FactoredInteger – integer with its factorization

Initialize (Constructor)

```
FactoredInteger(integer: integer, factors: dict={})  
    → FactoredInteger
```

Integer with its factorization information.

Given `integer` should be positive. If `factors` is given, it is a dict of type `prime:exponent` and the product of `primeexponent` is equal to the `integer`. Otherwise, factorization is carried out in initialization.

```
from _partial_factorization(cls, integer: integer, partial: dict)  
    → FactoredInteger
```

A class method to create a new **FactoredInteger** object from partial factorization information `partial`.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>F * G</code>	multiplication (other operand can be an int)
<code>F ** n</code>	powering
<code>F == G</code>	equal
<code>F != G</code>	not equal
<code>F <= G</code>	less than or equal
<code>F < G</code>	less than
<code>F > G</code>	greater than
<code>F >= G</code>	greater than or equal
<code>F % G</code>	remainder (the result is an int)
<code>F // G</code>	same as exact_division method
<code>str(F)</code>	string
<code>int(F)</code>	convert to Python integer (forgetting factorization)

Methods

4.18.7.1 `is_divisible_by`

```
is_divisible_by(self, other: integer/FactoredInteger)  
    → bool
```

Return True if `other` divides `self`.

4.18.7.2 `exact_division`

```
exact_division(self, other: integer/FactoredInteger)  
    → FactoredInteger
```

Divide `self` by `other`. The `other` must divide `self`.

4.18.7.3 `divisors`

```
divisors(self) → list
```

Return all divisors as a list.

4.18.7.4 `proper_divisors`

```
proper_divisors(self) → list
```

Return all proper divisors (i.e. divisors excluding 1 and `self`) as a list.

4.18.7.5 `prime_divisors`

```
prime_divisors(self) → list
```

Return all prime divisors as a list.

4.18.7.6 `square_part`

```
square_part(self, asfactored: bool=False) → integer/FactoredInteger
```

Return the largest integer whose square divides `self`.

If an optional argument `asfactored` is true, then the result is also a **FactoredInteger** object. (default is False)

4.18.7.7 `squarefree_part`

`squarefree_part(self, asfactored: bool=False) → integer/FactoredInteger`

Return the largest squarefree integer which divides `self`.

If an optional argument `asfactored` is true, then the result is also a **FactoredInteger** object. (default is False)

4.18.7.8 `copy`

`copy(self) → FactoredInteger`

Return a copy of the object.

4.19 `factor.mpqqs` – MPQS

4.19.1 `mpqsfind`

`mpqsfind(n: integer, s: integer=0, f: integer=0, m: integer=0, verbose: bool=False) → integer`

Find a factor of `n` by MPQS(multiple-polynomial quadratic sieve) method.

MPQS is suitable for factorizing a large number. For efficiency, prime check and power check of `n` are done at start.

Optional arguments `s` is the range of sieve, `f` is the number of factor base, and `m` is multiplier. If these are not specified, the function guesses them from `n`.

4.19.2 `mpqs`

`mpqs(n: integer, s: integer=0, f: integer=0, m: integer=0) → factorlist`

Factorize `n` by MPQS method.

Optional arguments are same as **mpqsfind**.

4.20 factor.util – utilities for factorization

- Classes
 - **FactoringInteger**
 - **FactoringMethod**

These modules use *factorlist* data type for factored positive integers.

4.20.1 FactoringInteger – keeping track of factorization

Initialize (Constructor)

FactoringInteger(number: *integer*) → *FactoringInteger*

This is the base class for factoring integers.

number is stored in the attribute **number**. The factors will be stored in the attribute **factors**, and primality of factors will be tracked in the attribute **primality**.

The given **number** must be a composite number.

Attributes

number :
The composite number.

factors :
Factors known at the time being referred.

primality :
A dictionary of primality information of known factors. **True** if the factor is prime, **False** composite, or **None** undetermined.

Methods

4.20.1.1 getNextTarget – next target

`getNextTarget(self, cond: function=None) → integer`

Return the next target which meets `cond`.

If `cond` is not specified, then the next target is a composite (or undetermined) factor of **number**.

`cond` should be a binary predicate whose arguments are base and index.
If there is no target factor, **LookupError** will be raised.

4.20.1.2 getResult – result of factorization

`getResult(self) → factors`

Return the currently known factorization of the **number**.

4.20.1.3 register – register a new factor

`register(self, divisor: integer, isprime: bool=None)
→`

Register a `divisor` of the **number** if the `divisor` is a true divisor of the number.

The number is divided by the `divisor` as many times as possible.

The optional argument `isprime` tells the primality of the `divisor` (default to undetermined).

4.20.1.4 sortFactors – sort factors

`sortFactors(self) →`

Sort factors list.

This affects the result of **getResult**.

Examples

```

>>> A = factor.util.FactoringInteger(100)
>>> A.getNextTarget()
100
>>> A.getResult()
[(100, 1)]
>>> A.register(5, True)
>>> A.getResult()
[(5, 2), (4, 1)]
>>> A.sortFactors()
>>> A.getResult()
[(4, 1), (5, 2)]
>>> A.primalities
{4: None, 5: True}
>>> A.getNextTarget()
4

```

4.20.2 FactoringMethod – method of factorization

Initialize (Constructor)

FactoringMethod() $\rightarrow$ *FactoringMethod*

Base class of factoring methods.

All methods defined in **factor.methods** are implemented as derived classes of this class. The method which users may call is **factor** only. Other methods are explained for future implementers of a new factoring method.

Methods

4.20.2.1 factor – do factorization

```
factor(self, number: integer, return_type: str='list', need_sort:  
bool=False )  
    → factorlist
```

Return the factorization of the given positive integer `number`.

The default returned type is a **factorlist**.

A keyword option `return_type` can be as the following:

1. 'list' for default type (**factorlist**).
2. 'tracker' for **FactoringInteger**.

Another keyword option `need_sort` is Boolean: `True` to sort the result. This should be specified with `return_type='list'`.

4.20.2.2 †continue_factor – continue factorization

```
continue_factor(self, tracker: FactoringInteger, return_type:  
str='tracker', primeq: func=primeq )  
    → FactoringInteger
```

Continue factoring of the given `tracker` and return the result of factorization.

The default returned type is **FactoringInteger**, but if `return_type` is specified as 'list' then it returns **factorlist**. The primality is judged by a function specified in `primeq` optional keyword argument, which default is **primeq**.

4.20.2.3 †find – find a factor

```
find(self, target: integer, **options ) → integer
```

Find a factor from the `target` number.

This method has to be overridden, or **factor** method should be overridden not to call this method.

4.20.2.4 †generate – generate prime factors

```
generate(self, target: integer, **options ) → integer
```

Generate prime factors of the `target` number with their valuations.

The method may terminate with yielding $(1, 1)$ to indicate the factorization is incomplete.
This method has to be overridden, or **factor** method should be overridden not to call this method.

4.21 poly.array – for FFT algorithm

poly_list

In this section, data type of `coefficients` of polynomials is an *integer list* **poly_list** similarly as in **equation** section.

- **Classes**
 - **ArrayPoly**
 - **ArrayPolyMod**
- **Functions**
 - `check_zero_poly`
 - `arrange_coefficients`
 - **min_abs_mod**
 - **bit_reverse**
 - **ceillog**
 - **perfect_shuffle**
 - **FFT**
 - **reverse_FFT**

4.21.1 check_zero_poly – checks all zero coefficients

`check_zero_poly(coefficients: poly_list) → bool`

Return True if and only if `coefficients` consists of 0.

4.21.2 arrange_coefficients – remove needless zero

`arrange_coefficients(coefficients: poly_list) → coefficients`

Arrange `coefficients` such as `[1,2,0,3,0]` to `[1,2,0,3]` and such as `[0,1,2,1,0,0]` to `[0,1,2,1]` for example.

4.21.3 ArrayPoly – polynomial with integer coefficients

Initialize (Constructor)

`ArrayPoly(coefficients: poly_list=[0]) → ArrayPoly`

Initialize a polynomial with *integer* coefficients.

The leading coefficient is non-zero except the zero polynomial.

Attributes

`coefficients :`

The *poly_list* of *integers* deciding the polynomial.

`degree :`

The highest power of the variable of non-zero coefficient terms.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>f + g</code>	add
<code>f - g</code>	subtract
<code>f.scalar_mul(s)</code>	multiply f by scalar s
<code>f.upshift_degree(s)</code>	multiply f by X^s
<code>f.downshift_degree(s)</code>	divide f by X^s
<code>f == g</code>	equal
<code>f != g</code>	not equal
<code>f * g</code>	multiply
<code>f.power()</code>	square of f
<code>f.split_at(s)</code>	split $f = g + h$, $g.degree = s$
<code>f.FFT_mul(g)</code>	multiply by FFT

Methods

4.21.3.1 `coefficients_to_dict` – return coefficients as dict

`coefficients_to_dict(self) → dict`

4.21.3.2 `__repr__` – return coefficients repr as dict

`__repr__(self) → repr`

4.21.3.3 `__str__` – return coefficients str as dict

`__str__(self) → str`

4.21.4 `ArrayPolyMod` – polynomial with coefficients modulo positive integer

Initialize (Constructor)

`ArrayPolyMod(coefficients: poly_list, mod: integer)`
`→ ArrayPolyMod`

Subclass of `ArrayPoly`. Initialize a polynomial with integer `coefficients` taking remainder modulo positive `mod`.

Any member `c` in `coefficients` satisfies $0 \leq c < \text{mod}$.

Attributes

`coefficients` :

The ***poly_list*** of *integers* deciding the polynomial.

`degree` :

The highest power of the variable of non-zero coefficient terms.

`mod` :

The modulus of coefficient.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>f + g</code>	add
<code>f - g</code>	subtract
<code>f.scalar_mul(s)</code>	multiply <code>f</code> by scalar <code>s</code>
<code>f.upshift_degree(s)</code>	multiply <code>f</code> by X^s
<code>f.downshift_degree(s)</code>	divide <code>f</code> by X^s
<code>f == g</code>	equal
<code>f != g</code>	not equal
<code>f * g</code>	multiply
<code>f.power()</code>	square of <code>f</code>
<code>f.split_at(s)</code>	split <code>f = g + h</code> , <code>g.degree = s</code>
<code>f.FFT_mul(g)</code>	multiply by FFT

Methods

4.21.4.1 `__repr__` – return mod and coefficients repr as dict

`__repr__(self) → repr`

4.21.4.2 `__str__` – return mod and coefficients str as dict

`__str__(self) → str`

4.21.5 `min_abs_mod` – minimum absolute modulo

`min_abs_mod(a, b) → int`

Returns the minimum absolute reminder of `a` modulo `b`.

4.21.6 `bit_reverse` – the result reversed bit of `n`

`bit_reverse(n, bound) → total`

`bound` is the number of significant figures of bit.

`total` is the result reversed bit of `n`.

4.21.7 `ceillog` – ceiling of $\log(n, 2)$

`ceillog(n, base=2) → integer`

Return ceiling of $\log(n, 2)$.

4.21.8 `perfect_shuffle` – arrange list by divide-and-conquer

`perfect_shuffle(List: list) → list`

Return shuffled *list* of original `List`.

4.21.9 FFT – Fast Fourier Transform

FFT(*f*: *ArrayPoly*, *bound*: *integer*) → *poly_list*

Return the result of valuations of *f* by FFT against number of *bound* different values.

4.21.10 reverse_FFT – Reverse Fast Fourier Transform

reverse_FFT(*values*, *bound*) → *poly_list*

4.22 poly.factor – polynomial factorization

The factor module is for factorizations of integer coefficient univariate polynomials.

This module using following type:

polynomial :

`polynomial` is the polynomial generated by function `poly.uniutil.polynomial`.

4.22.1 brute_force_search – search factorization by brute force

```
brute_force_search(f: poly.uniutil.IntegerPolynomial, fp_factors:
list, q: integer)
→ [factors]
```

Find the factorization of `f` by searching a factor which is a product of some combination in `fp_factors`. The combination is searched by brute force.

The argument `fp_factors` is a list of `poly.uniutil.FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial`.

4.22.2 divisibility_test – divisibility test

```
divisibility_test(f: polynomial, g: polynomial) → bool
```

Return Boolean value whether `f` is divisible by `g` or not, for polynomials.

4.22.3 minimum_absolute_injection – send coefficients to minimum absolute representation

```
minimum_absolute_injection(f: polynomial) → F
```

Return an integer coefficient polynomial `F` by injection of a $\mathbb{Z}/p\mathbb{Z}$ coefficient polynomial `f` with sending each coefficient to minimum absolute representatives.

The coefficient ring of given polynomial `f` must be **IntegerResidueClassRing** or **FinitePrimeField**.

4.22.4 padic_factorization – p-adic factorization

```
padic_factorization(f: polynomial) → p, factors
```

Return a prime p and a p -adic factorization of given integer coefficient square-free polynomial f . The result **factors** have integer coefficients, injected from $\mathbb{F}_p$ to its minimum absolute representation.

†The prime is chosen to be:

1. f is still squarefree mod p ,
2. the number of factors is not greater than with the successive prime.

The given polynomial f must be `poly.uniutil.IntegerPolynomial`.

4.22.5 `upper_bound_of_coefficient` – Landau-Mignotte bound of coefficients

`upper_bound_of_coefficient(f: polynomial) → int`

Compute Landau-Mignotte bound of coefficients of factors, whose degree is no greater than half of the given f .

The given polynomial f must have integer coefficients.

4.22.6 `zassenhaus` – squarefree integer polynomial factorization by Zassenhaus method

`zassenhaus(f: polynomial) → list of factors f`

Factor a squarefree integer coefficient polynomial f with Berlekamp-Zassenhaus method.

4.22.7 `integerpolynomialfactorization` – Integer polynomial factorization

`integerpolynomialfactorization(f: polynomial) → factor`

Factor an integer coefficient polynomial f with Berlekamp-Zassenhaus method.

factor output by the form of list of tuples that formed (factor, index).

4.23 poly.formalsum – formal sum

- Classes

- †**FormalSumContainerInterface**
- **DictFormalSum**
- †**ListFormalSum**

The formal sum is mathematically a finite sum of terms, A term consists of two parts: coefficient and base. All coefficients in a formal sum are in a common ring, while bases are arbitrary.

Two formal sums can be added in the following way. If there are terms with common base, they are fused into a new term with the same base and coefficients added.

A coefficient can be looked up from the base. If the specified base does not appear in the formal sum, it is null.

We refer the following for convenience as **terminit**:

terminit :

terminit means one of types to initialize **dict**. The dictionary constructed from it will be considered as a mapping from bases to coefficients.

Note for beginner You may need USE only **DictFormalSum**, but may have to READ the description of **FormalSumContainerInterface** because interface (all method names and their semantics) is defined in it.

4.23.1 FormalSumContainerInterface – interface class

Initialize (Constructor)

Since the interface is an abstract class, do not instantiate.

The interface defines what “formal sum” is. Derived classes must provide the following operations and methods.

Operations

operator	explanation
$f + g$	addition
$f - g$	subtraction
$-f$	negation
$+f$	new copy
$f * a, a * f$	multiplication by scalar a
$f == g$	equality
$f != g$	inequality
$f[b]$	get coefficient corresponding to a base b
$b \text{ in } f$	return whether base b is in f
$\text{len}(f)$	number of terms
$\text{hash}(f)$	hash

Methods

4.23.1.1 `construct_with_default` – copy-constructing

```
construct_with_default(self, maindata: terminit)  
→ FormalSumContainerInterface
```

Create a new formal sum of the same class with `self`, with given only the `maindata` and use copy of `self`'s data if necessary.

4.23.1.2 `iterterms` – iterator of terms

```
iterterms(self) → iterator
```

Return an iterator of the terms.

Each term yielded from iterators is a `(base, coefficient)` pair.

4.23.1.3 `itercoefficients` – iterator of coefficients

```
itercoefficients(self) → iterator
```

Return an iterator of the coefficients.

4.23.1.4 `iterbases` – iterator of bases

```
iterbases(self) → iterator
```

Return an iterator of the bases.

4.23.1.5 `terms` – list of terms

```
terms(self) → list
```

Return a list of the terms.

Each term in returned lists is a `(base, coefficient)` pair.

4.23.1.6 `coefficients` – list of coefficients

```
coefficients(self) → list
```

Return a list of the coefficients.

4.23.1.7 bases – list of bases

bases(self) → list

Return a list of the bases.

4.23.1.8 terms_map – list of terms

terms_map(self, func: function) → FormalSumContainerInterface

Map on terms, i.e., create a new formal sum by applying **func** to each term.

func has to accept two parameters **base** and **coefficient**, then return a new term pair.

4.23.1.9 coefficients_map – list of coefficients

coefficients_map(self) → FormalSumContainerInterface

Map on coefficients, i.e., create a new formal sum by applying **func** to each coefficient.

func has to accept one parameters **coefficient**, then return a new coefficient.

4.23.1.10 bases_map – list of bases

bases_map(self) → FormalSumContainerInterface

Map on bases, i.e., create a new formal sum by applying **func** to each base.

func has to accept one parameters **base**, then return a new base.

4.23.2 DictFormalSum – formal sum implemented with dictionary

A formal sum implementation based on dict.

This class inherits **FormalSumContainerInterface**. All methods of the interface are implemented.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
DictFormalSum(args: terminit, defaultvalue: RingElement=None)  
→ DictFormalSum
```

See **terminit** for type of **args**. It makes a mapping from bases to coefficients.

The optional argument **defaultvalue** is the default value for **__getitem__**, i.e., if there is no term with the specified base, a look up attempt returns the **defaultvalue**. It is, thus, an element of the ring to which other coefficients belong.

4.23.3 ListFormalSum – formal sum implemented with list

A formal sum implementation based on list.

This class inherits **FormalSumContainerInterface**. All methods of the interface are implemented.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
ListFormalSum(args: terminit, defaultvalue: RingElement=None)  
→ ListFormalSum
```

See **terminit** for type of **args**. It makes a mapping from bases to coefficients.

The optional argument **defaultvalue** is the default value for **__getitem__**, i.e., if there is no term with the specified base, a look up attempt returns the **defaultvalue**. It is, thus, an element of the ring to which other coefficients belong.

4.24 poly.groebner – Gröbner Basis

The groebner module is for computing Gröbner bases for multivariate polynomial ideals.

This module uses the following types:

polynomial :

`polynomial` is the polynomial generated by function **polynomial**.

order :

`order` is the order on terms of polynomials.

4.24.1 buchberger – naïve algorithm for obtaining Gröbner basis

buchberger(generating: *list*, order: *order*) → [*polynomials*]

Return a Gröbner basis of the ideal generated by given generating set of polynomials with respect to the `order`.

Be careful, this implementation is very naive.

The argument `generating` is a list of **Polynomial**; the argument `order` is an order.

4.24.2 normal_strategy – normal algorithm for obtaining Gröbner basis

normal_strategy(generating: *list*, order: *order*) → [*polynomials*]

Return a Gröbner basis of the ideal generated by given generating set of polynomials with respect to the `order`.

This function uses the ‘normal strategy’.

The argument `generating` is a list of **Polynomial**; the argument `order` is an order.

4.24.3 reduce_groebner – reduce Gröbner basis

reduce_groebner(gbasis: *list*, order: *order*) → [*polynomials*]

Return the reduced Gröbner basis constructed from a Gröbner basis.

The output satisfies that:

- $\text{lb}(f)$ divides $\text{lb}(g) \Rightarrow g$ is not in reduced Gröbner basis, and
- monic.

The argument `gbasis` is a list of polynomials, a Gröbner basis (not merely a generating set).

4.24.4 `s_polynomial` – S-polynomial

`s_polynomial(f: polynomial, g: polynomial, order: order)`
 $\rightarrow$ [*polynomials*]

Return S-polynomial of `f` and `g` with respect to the `order`.

$$S(f, g) = (\text{lc}(g) * T / \text{lb}(f)) * f - (\text{lc}(f) * T / \text{lb}(g)) * g,$$

where $T = \text{lcm}(\text{lb}(f), \text{lb}(g))$.

Examples

```
>>> f = multiutil.polynomial({(1,0):2, (1,1):1},rational.theRationalField, 2)
>>> g = multiutil.polynomial({(0,1):-2, (1,1):1},rational.theRationalField, 2)
>>> lex = termorder.lexicographic_order
>>> groebner.s_polynomial(f, g, lex)
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 0): 2, (0, 1): 2})
>>> gb = groebner.normal_strategy([f, g], lex)
>>> for gb_poly in gb:
...     print(gb_poly)
...
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 1): 1, (1, 0): 2})
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 1): 1, (0, 1): -2})
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 0): 2, (0, 1): 2})
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(0, 2): -2, (0, 1): -4.0})
>>> gb_red = groebner.reduce_groebner(gb, lex)
>>> for gb_poly in gb_red:
...     print(gb_poly)
...
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(1, 0): Rational(1, 1), (0, 1): Rational(1, 1)})
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(0, 2): Rational(1, 1), (0, 1): 2.0})
```

4.25 `poly.hensel` – Hensel lift

- Classes
 - † **HenselLiftPair**

- † **HenselLiftMulti**
- † **HenselLiftSimultaneously**
- **Functions**
 - **lift_upto**

In this module document, *polynomial* means integer polynomial.

4.25.1 HenselLiftPair – Hensel lift for a pair

Initialize (Constructor)

```
HenselLiftPair(f: polynomial, a1: polynomial, a2: polynomial, u1: polynomial, u2: polynomial, p: integer, q: integer=p)  
→ HenselLiftPair
```

This object keeps integer polynomial pair which will be lifted by Hensel's lemma.

The argument should satisfy the following preconditions:

- f, a1 and a2 are monic
- $f == a1 * a2 \pmod{q}$
- $a1 * u1 + a2 * u2 == 1 \pmod{p}$
- p divides q and both are positive

```
from_factors(f: polynomial, a1: polynomial, a2: polynomial, p: integer)  
→ HenselLiftPair
```

This is a class method to create and return an instance of `HenselLiftPair`. You do not have to precompute u1 and u2 for the default constructor; they will be prepared for you from other arguments.

The argument should satisfy the following preconditions:

- f, a1 and a2 are monic
- $f == a1 * a2 \pmod{p}$
- p is prime

Attributes

point :
factors a1 and a2 as a list.

Methods

4.25.1.1 lift – lift one step

`lift(self) →`

Lift polynomials by so-called the quadratic method.

4.25.1.2 lift_factors – lift a_1 and a_2

`lift_factors(self) →`

Update factors by lifted integer coefficient polynomials A_i 's:

- $f == A_1 * A_2 \pmod{p * q}$
- $A_i == a_i \pmod{q} \ (i = 1, 2)$

Moreover, q is updated to $p * q$.

†The preconditions which should be automatically satisfied:

- $f == a_1 * a_2 \pmod{q}$
- $a_1 * u_1 + a_2 * u_2 == 1 \pmod{p}$
- p divides q

4.25.1.3 lift_ladder – lift u_1 and u_2

`lift_ladder(self) →`

Update u_1 and u_2 with U_1 and U_2 :

- $a_1 * U_1 + a_2 * U_2 == 1 \pmod{p^2}$
- $U_i == u_i \pmod{p} \ (i = 1, 2)$

Then, update p to p^2 .

†The preconditions which should be automatically satisfied:

- $a_1 * u_1 + a_2 * u_2 == 1 \pmod{p}$

4.25.2 HenselLiftMulti – Hensel lift for multiple polynomials

Initialize (Constructor)

`HenselLiftMulti(f: polynomial, factors: list, ladder: tuple, p: integer,
q: integer=p)
→ HenselLiftMulti`

This object keeps integer polynomial factors which will be lifted by Hensel's lemma. If the number of factors is just two, then you should use **HenselLiftPair**.

factors is a list of polynomials; we refer those polynomials as **a1**, **a2**, ... **ladder** is a tuple of two lists **sis** and **tis**, both lists consist polynomials. We refer polynomials in **sis** as **s1**, **s2**, ..., and those in **tis** as **t1**, **t2**, ... Moreover, we define **bi** as the product of **aj**'s for $i < j$. The argument should satisfy the following preconditions:

- **f** and all of **factors** are monic
- $f == a1 * \dots * ar \pmod{q}$
- $a_i * s_i + b_i * t_i == 1 \pmod{p} \ (i = 1, 2, \dots, r)$
- **p** divides **q** and both are positive

```
from _factors(f: polynomial, factors: list, p: integer)
    → HenselLiftMulti
```

This is a class method to create and return an instance of **HenselLiftMulti**. You do not have to precompute **ladder** for the default constructor; they will be prepared for you from other arguments.

The argument should satisfy the following preconditions:

- **f** and all of **factors** are monic
- $f == a1 * \dots * ar \pmod{q}$
- **p** is prime

Attributes

point :

factors **ais** as a list.

Methods

4.25.2.1 lift – lift one step

lift(self) →

Lift polynomials by so-called the quadratic method.

4.25.2.2 lift_factors – lift factors

lift_factors(self) →

Update factors by lifted integer coefficient polynomials A_i s:

- $f == A_1 \dots A_r \pmod{p * q}$
- $A_i == a_i \pmod{q} \ (i = 1, \dots, r)$

Moreover, q is updated to $p * q$.

†The preconditions which should be automatically satisfied:

- $f == a_1 \dots a_r \pmod{q}$
- $a_i * s_i + b_i * t_i == 1 \pmod{p} \ (i = 1, \dots, r)$
- p divides q

4.25.2.3 lift_ladder – lift u_1 and u_2

lift_ladder(self) →

Update s_i s and t_i s with S_i s and T_i s:

- $a_1 * S_i + b_i * T_i == 1 \pmod{p^2}$
- $S_i == s_i \pmod{p} \ (i = 1, \dots, r)$
- $T_i == t_i \pmod{p} \ (i = 1, \dots, r)$

Then, update p to p^2 .

†The preconditions which should be automatically satisfied:

- $a_i * s_i + b_i * t_i == 1 \pmod{p} \ (i = 1, \dots, r)$

4.25.3 HenselLiftSimultaneously

The method explained in [14].

†Keep these invariants:

- `ais`, `pi` and `gis` are monic
- $f == g_1 \dots g_r \pmod{p}$
- $f == d_0 + d_1 p + d_2 p^2 + \dots + d_k p^k$
- $h_i == g_{(i+1)} \dots g_r$
- $1 == g_i s_i + h_i t_i \pmod{p} \quad (i = 1, \dots, r)$
- $\deg(s_i) < \deg(h_i), \deg(t_i) < \deg(g_i) \quad (i = 1, \dots, r)$
- p divides q
- $f == l_1 \dots l_r \pmod{q/p}$
- $f == a_1 \dots a_r \pmod{q}$
- $u_i == a_i y_i + b_i z_i \pmod{p} \quad (i = 1, \dots, r)$

Initialize (Constructor)

```
HenselLiftSimultaneously(target: polynomial, factors: list, cofactors:
list, bases: list, p: integer)
    → HenselLiftSimultaneously
```

This object keeps integer polynomial factors which will be lifted by Hensel's lemma.

```
f = target, gi in factors, his in cofactors and sis and tis are in bases.
from _factors(target: polynomial, factors: list, p: integer, ubound: in-
teger=sys.maxint)
    → HenselLiftSimultaneously
```

This is a class method to create and return an instance of `HenselLiftSimultaneously`, whose factors are lifted by `HenselLiftMulti` upto `ubound` if it is smaller than `sys.maxint`, or upto `sys.maxint` otherwise. You do not have to precompute auxiliary polynomials for the default constructor; they will be prepared for you from other arguments.

```
f = target, gis in factors.
```

Methods

4.25.3.1 lift – lift one step

`lift(self) →`

The lift. You should call this method only.

4.25.3.2 first_lift – the first step

`first_lift(self) →`

Start lifting.

`f == l1*l2*...*lr (mod p**2)`

Initialize `dis`, `uis`, `vis` and `zis`. Update `ais`, `bis`. Then, update `q` with `p**2`.

4.25.3.3 general_lift – next step

`general_lift(self) →`

Continue lifting.

`f == a1*a2*...*ar (mod p*q)`

Initialize `ais`, `ubis`, `vis` and `zis`. Then, update `q` with `p*q`.

4.25.4 lift_upto – main function

`lift_upto(self, target: polynomial, factors: list, p: integer, bound: integer)`
`→ tuple`

Hensel lift `factors` mod `p` of `target` upto `bound` and return `factors` mod `q` and the `q` itself.

These preconditions should be satisfied:

- `target` is monic.
- `target == product(factors) mod p`

The result (`factors`, `q`) satisfies the following postconditions:

- there exist k s.t. `q == p**k >= bound` and
- `target == product(factors) mod q`

4.26 poly.multiutil – utilities for multivariate polynomials

- **Classes**
 - **RingPolynomial**
 - **DomainPolynomial**
 - **UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial**
 - OrderProvider
 - NestProvider
 - PseudoDivisionProvider
 - GcdProvider
 - RingElementProvider
- **Functions**
 - **polynomial**

4.26.1 RingPolynomial

General polynomial with commutative ring coefficients.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
RingPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, **keywords: dict)  
    → RingPolynomial
```

The keywords must include:

coeffring a commutative ring (*CommutativeRing*)

number_of_variables the number of variables(*integer*)

order term order (*TermOrder*)

This class inherits **BasicPolynomial**, **OrderProvider**, **NestProvider** and **RingElementProvider**.

Attributes

order :
term order.

Methods

4.26.1.1 `getRing`

`getRing(self) → Ring`

Return an object of a subclass of `Ring`, to which the polynomial belongs.
(This method overrides the definition in `RingElementProvider`)

4.26.1.2 `getCoefficientRing`

`getCoefficientRing(self) → Ring`

Return an object of a subclass of `Ring`, to which the all coefficients belong.
(This method overrides the definition in `RingElementProvider`)

4.26.1.3 `leading_variable`

`leading_variable(self) → integer`

Return the position of the leading variable (the leading term among all total degree one terms).
The leading term varies with term orders, so does the result. The term order can be specified via the attribute `order`.
(This method is inherited from `NestProvider`)

4.26.1.4 `nest`

**`nest(self, outer: integer, coeffring: CommutativeRing)`
`→ polynomial`**

Nest the polynomial by extracting `outer` variable at the given position.
(This method is inherited from `NestProvider`)

4.26.1.5 `unnest`

**`nest(self, q: polynomial, outer: integer, coeffring: CommutativeRing)`
`→ polynomial`**

Unnest the nested polynomial `q` by inserting `outer` variable at the given position.
(This method is inherited from `NestProvider`)

4.26.2 DomainPolynomial

Polynomial with domain coefficients.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
DomainPolynomial(coefficients: termint, **keywords: dict)  
    → DomainPolynomial
```

The keywords must include:

coeffring a commutative ring (*CommutativeRing*)

number_of_variables the number of variables(*integer*)

order term order (*TermOrder*)

This class inherits **RingPolynomial** and **PseudoDivisionProvider**.

Operations

operator	explanation
f / g	division (result is a rational function)

Methods

4.26.2.1 `pseudo_divmod`

`pseudo_divmod(self, other: polynomial) → polynomial`

Return Q, R polynomials such that:

$$d^{\deg(\text{self})-\deg(\text{other})+1}\text{self} = \text{other} \times Q + R$$

w.r.t. a fixed variable, where d is the leading coefficient of **`other`**.

The leading coefficient varies with term orders, so does the result. The term order can be specified via the attribute **`order`**.

(This method is inherited from `PseudoDivisionProvider`.)

4.26.2.2 `pseudofloordiv`

`pseudofloordiv(self, other: polynomial) → polynomial`

Return a polynomial Q such that

$$d^{\deg(\text{self})-\deg(\text{other})+1}\text{self} = \text{other} \times Q + R$$

w.r.t. a fixed variable, where d is the leading coefficient of **`other`** and R is a polynomial.

The leading coefficient varies with term orders, so does the result. The term order can be specified via the attribute **`order`**.

(This method is inherited from `PseudoDivisionProvider`.)

4.26.2.3 `pseudo_mod`

`pseudo_mod(self, other: polynomial) → polynomial`

Return a polynomial R such that

$$d^{\deg(\text{self})-\deg(\text{other})+1} \times \text{self} = \text{other} \times Q + R$$

where d is the leading coefficient of **`other`** and Q a polynomial.

The leading coefficient varies with term orders, so does the result. The term order can be specified via the attribute **`order`**.

(This method is inherited from `PseudoDivisionProvider`.)

4.26.2.4 `exact_division`

`exact_division(self, other: polynomial) → polynomial`

Return quotient of exact division.

(This method is inherited from `PseudoDivisionProvider`.)

4.26.3 UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial

Polynomial with unique factorization domain (UFD) coefficients.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial(coefficients: terminit,  
**keywords: dict)  
    → UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial
```

The keywords must include:

coeffring a commutative ring (*CommutativeRing*)

number_of_variables the number of variables(*integer*)

order term order (*TermOrder*)

This class inherits **DomainPolynomial** and **GcdProvider**.

Methods

4.26.3.1 gcd

gcd(self, other: *polynomial*) → *polynomial*

Return gcd. The nested polynomials' gcd is used.
(This method is inherited from GcdProvider.)

4.26.3.2 resultant

resultant(self, other: *polynomial*, var: *integer*) → *polynomial*

Return resultant of two polynomials of the same ring, with respect to the variable specified by its position var.

4.26.4 polynomial – factory function for various polynomials

polynomial(coefficients: *terminit*, coeffring: *CommutativeRing*,
number_of_variables: *integer*=None)
→ *polynomial*

Return a polynomial.

†One can override the way to choose a polynomial type from a coefficient ring, by setting:
`special_ring_table[coeffring_type] = polynomial_type`
before the function call.

4.26.5 prepare_indeterminates – simultaneous declarations of indeterminates

prepare_indeterminates(names: *string*, ctx: *dict*, coeffring: *CoefficientRing*=None)
→ *None*

From space separated **names** of indeterminates, prepare variables representing the indeterminates. The result will be stored in **ctx** dictionary.

The variables should be prepared at once, otherwise wrong aliases of variables may confuse you in later calculation.

If an optional **coeffring** is not given, indeterminates will be initialized as integer coefficient polynomials.

Examples

```
>>> prepare_indeterminates("X Y Z", globals())  
>>> Y
```

`UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial({(0, 1, 0): 1})`

4.27 poly.multivar – multivariate polynomial

- Classes
 - †**PolynomialInterface**
 - †**BasicPolynomial**
 - **TermIndices**

4.27.1 PolynomialInterface – base class for all multivariate polynomials

Since the interface is an abstract class, do not instantiate.

4.27.2 BasicPolynomial – basic implementation of polynomial

Basic polynomial data type.

4.27.3 TermIndices – Indices of terms of multivariate polynomials

It is a tuple-like object.

Initialize (Constructor)

TermIndices(indices: *tuple*) → *TermIndices*

The constructor does not check the validity of indices, such as integerness, nonnegativity, etc.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>t == u</code>	equality
<code>t != u</code>	inequality
<code>t + u</code>	(componentwise) addition
<code>t - u</code>	(componentwise) subtraction
<code>t * a</code>	(componentwise) multiplication by scalar a
<code>t <= u, t < u, t >= u, t > u</code>	ordering
<code>t[k]</code>	k-th index
<code>len(t)</code>	length
<code>iter(t)</code>	iterator
<code>hash(t)</code>	hash

Methods

4.27.3.1 pop

`pop(self, pos: integer) → (integer, TermIndices)`

Return the index at pos and a new TermIndices object as the omitting-the-pos indices.

4.27.3.2 gcd

`gcd(self, other: TermIndices) → TermIndices`

Return the “gcd” of two indices.

4.27.3.3 lcm

`lcm(self, other: TermIndices) → TermIndices`

Return the “lcm” of two indices.

4.28 poly.ratfunc – rational function

- Classes

- **RationalFunction**

A rational function is a ratio of two polynomials.

Please don't expect this module is useful. It just provides an acceptable container for polynomial division.

4.28.1 RationalFunction – rational function class

Initialize (Constructor)

RationalFunction(numerator: *polynomial*, denominator: *polynomial*=1)
→ *RationalFunction*

Make a rational function with the given **numerator** and **denominator**. If the **numerator** is a **RationalFunction** instance and **denominator** is not given, then make a copy. If the **numerator** is a kind of polynomial, then make a rational function whose numerator is the given polynomial. Additionally, if **denominator** is also given, the denominator is set to its values, otherwise the denominator is 1.

Attributes

numerator :
polynomial.

denominator :
polynomial.

Operations

operator	explanation
A==B	Return whether A and B are equal or not.
str(A)	Return readable string.
repr(A)	Return string representing A's structure.

Methods

4.28.1.1 `getRing` – get rational function field

`getRing(self)` → **RationalFunctionField**

Return the rational function field to which the rational function belongs.

4.29 poly.ring – polynomial rings

- Classes
 - **PolynomialRing**
 - **RationalFunctionField**
 - **PolynomialIdeal**

4.29.1 PolynomialRing – ring of polynomials

A class for uni-/multivariate polynomial rings. A subclass of **CommutativeRing**.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
PolynomialRing(coeffring: CommutativeRing, number_of_variables:  
integer=1)  
→ PolynomialRing
```

`coeffring` is the ring of coefficients. `number_of_variables` is the number of variables. If its value is greater than 1, the ring is for multivariate polynomials.

Attributes

zero :
zero of the ring.

one :
one of the ring.

Methods

4.29.1.1 getInstance – classmethod

`getInstance(coeffring: CommutativeRing, number_of_variables: integer)`
`→ PolynomialRing`

return the instance of polynomial ring with coefficient ring `coeffring` and number of variables `number_of_variables`.

4.29.1.2 getCoefficientRing

`getCoefficientRing() → CommutativeRing`

4.29.1.3 getQuotientField

`getQuotientField() → Field`

4.29.1.4 issubring

`issubring(other: Ring) → bool`

4.29.1.5 issuperring

`issuperring(other: Ring) → bool`

4.29.1.6 getCharacteristic

`getCharacteristic() → integer`

4.29.1.7 createElement

`createElement(seed) → polynomial`

Return a polynomial. `seed` can be a polynomial, an element of coefficient ring, or any other data suited for the first argument of uni-/multi-variate polynomials.

4.29.1.8 gcd

`gcd(a, b) → polynomial`

Return the greatest common divisor of given polynomials (if possible). The polynomials must be in the polynomial ring. If the coefficient ring is a field, the result is monic.

4.29.1.9 isdomain

4.29.1.10 iseclidean

4.29.1.11 isnoetherian

4.29.1.12 ispid

4.29.1.13 isufd

Inherited from **CommutativeRing**.

4.29.2 RationalFunctionField – field of rational functions

Initialize (Constructor)

```
RationalFunctionField(field: Field, number_of_variables: integer)  
→ RationalFunctionField
```

A class for fields of rational functions. It is a subclass of **QuotientField**.

`field` is the field of coefficients, which should be a **Field** object. `number_of_variables` is the number of variables.

Attributes

zero :
zero of the field.

one :
one of the field.

Methods

4.29.2.1 getInstance – classmethod

```
getInstance(coefffield: Field, number_of_variables: integer)  
→ RationalFunctionField
```

return the instance of `RationalFunctionField` with coefficient field `coefffield` and number of variables `number_of_variables`.

4.29.2.2 createElement

```
createElement(*seedarg: list, **seedkwd: dict) → RationalFunction
```

4.29.2.3 getQuotientField

```
getQuotientField() → Field
```

4.29.2.4 issubring

```
issubring(other: Ring) → bool
```

4.29.2.5 issuperring

```
issuperring(other: Ring) → bool
```

4.29.2.6 unnest

```
unnest() → RationalFunctionField
```

If `self` is a nested `RationalFunctionField` i.e. its coefficient field is also a `RationalFunctionField`, then the method returns one level unnested `RationalFunctionField`.
For example:

Examples

```
>>> RationalFunctionField(RationalFunctionField(Q, 1), 1).unnest()  
RationalFunctionField(Q, 2)
```

4.29.2.7 gcd

```
gcd(a: RationalFunction, b: RationalFunction) → RationalFunction
```

Inherited from `Field`.

4.29.2.8 isdomain

4.29.2.9 iseclidean

4.29.2.10 isnoetherian

4.29.2.11 ispid

4.29.2.12 isufd

Inherited from **CommutativeRing**.

4.29.3 PolynomialIdeal – ideal of polynomial ring

A subclass of **Ideal** represents ideals of polynomial rings.

Initialize (Constructor)

PolynomialIdeal(generators: *list*, polyring: *PolynomialRing*)
→ *PolynomialIdeal*

Create an object represents an ideal in a polynomial ring **polyring** generated by **generators**.

Operations

operator	explanation
in	membership test
==	same ideal?
!=	different ideal?
+	addition
*	multiplication

Methods

4.29.3.1 reduce

`reduce(element: polynomial) → polynomial`

Modulo `element` by the ideal.

4.29.3.2 issubset

`issubset(other: set) → bool`

4.29.3.3 issuperset

`issuperset(other: set) → bool`

4.30 poly.termorder – term orders

- **Classes**
 - † **TermOrderInterface**
 - † **UnivarTermOrder**
 - **MultivarTermOrder**
- **Functions**
 - **weight_order**

4.30.1 TermOrderInterface – interface of term order

Initialize (Constructor)

TermOrderInterface(comparator: *function*) → *TermOrderInterface*

A term order is primarily a function, which determines precedence between two terms (or monomials). By the precedence, all terms are ordered.

More precisely in terms of **Python**, a term order accepts two tuples of integers, each of which represents power indices of the term, and returns 0, 1 or -1 just like **cmp** built-in function.

A **TermOrder** object provides not only the precedence function, but also a method to format a string for a polynomial, to tell degree, leading coefficients, etc.

comparator accepts two tuple-like objects of integers, each of which represents power indices of the term, and returns 0, 1 or -1 just like **cmp** built-in function.

This class is abstract and should not be instantiated. The methods below have to be overridden.

Methods

4.30.1.1 cmp

`cmp(self, left: tuple, right: tuple) → integer`

Compare two index tuples `left` and `right` and determine precedence.

4.30.1.2 format

`format(self, polynom: polynomial, **keywords: dict)`
→ *string*

Return the formatted string of the polynomial `polynom`.

4.30.1.3 leading_coefficient

`leading_coefficient(self, polynom: polynomial) → CommutativeRingElement`

Return the leading coefficient of polynomial `polynom` with respect to the term order.

4.30.1.4 leading_term

`leading_term(self, polynom: polynomial) → tuple`

Return the leading term of polynomial `polynom` as tuple of (degree index, coefficient) with respect to the term order.

4.30.2 UnivarTermOrder – term order for univariate polynomials

Initialize (Constructor)

`UnivarTermOrder(comparator: function) → UnivarTermOrder`

There is one unique term order for univariate polynomials. It's known as degree.

One thing special to univariate case is that powers are not tuples but bare integers. According to the fact, method signatures also need be translated from the definitions in `TermOrderInterface`, but its easy, and we omit some explanations.

`comparator` can be any callable that accepts two integers and returns 0, 1 or -1 just like `cmp`, i.e. if they are equal it returns 0, first one is greater 1, and otherwise -1. Theoretically acceptable comparator is only the `cmp` function.

This class inherits **TermOrderInterface**.

Methods

4.30.2.1 format

```
format(self, polynom: polynomial, varname: string='X', reverse:  
bool=False)  
    → string
```

Return the formatted string of the polynomial `polynom`.

- `polynom` must be a univariate polynomial.
- `varname` can be set to the name of the variable.
- `reverse` can be either `True` or `False`. If it's `True`, terms appear in reverse (descending) order.

4.30.2.2 degree

```
degree(self, polynom: polynomial) → integer
```

Return the degree of the polynomial `polynom`.

4.30.2.3 tail_degree

```
tail_degree(self, polynom: polynomial) → integer
```

Return the least degree among all terms of the `polynom`.

This method is *experimental*.

4.30.3 MultivarTermOrder – term order for multivariate polynomials

Initialize (Constructor)

```
MultivarTermOrder(comparator: function) → MultivarTermOrder
```

This class inherits **TermOrderInterface**.

Methods

4.30.3.1 format

```
format(self, polynom: polynomial, varname: tuple=None, reverse:
bool=False, **kwargs: dict)
    → string
```

Return the formatted string of the polynomial `polynom`.

An additional argument `varnames` is required to name variables.

- `polynom` is a multivariate polynomial.
- `varnames` is the sequence of the variable names.
- `reverse` can be either `True` or `False`. If it's `True`, terms appear in reverse (descending) order.

4.30.4 weight_order – weight order

```
weight_order(weight: sequence, tie_breaker: function=None)
    → function
```

Return a comparator of weight ordering by `weight`.

Let w denote the `weight`. The weight ordering is defined for arguments x and y that $x < y$ if $w \cdot x < w \cdot y$ or $w \cdot x == w \cdot y$ and tie breaker tells $x < y$.

The option `tie_breaker` is another comparator that will be used if dot products with the weight vector leaves arguments tie. If the option is `None` (default) and a tie breaker is indeed necessary to order given arguments, a `TypeError` is raised.

Examples

```
>>> w = termorder.MultivarTermOrder(
...     termorder.weight_order((6, 3, 1), cmp))
>>> w.cmp((1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 2))
1
```


4.31 poly.uniutil – univariate utilities

- **Classes**
 - **RingPolynomial**
 - **DomainPolynomial**
 - **UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial**
 - **IntegerPolynomial**
 - **FieldPolynomial**
 - **FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial**
 - OrderProvider
 - DivisionProvider
 - PseudoDivisionProvider
 - ContentProvider
 - SubresultantGcdProvider
 - PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider
 - VariableProvider
 - RingElementProvider
- **Functions**
 - **polynomial**

4.31.1 RingPolynomial – polynomial over commutative ring

Initialize (Constructor)

```
RingPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, coeffring: CommutativeR-  
ing, **keywords: dict)  
    → RingPolynomial object
```

Initialize a polynomial over the given commutative ring `coeffring`.

This class inherits from **SortedPolynomial**, **OrderProvider** and **RingElementProvider**.

The type of the `coefficients` is **terminit**. `coeffring` is an instance of descendant of **CommutativeRing**.

Methods

4.31.1.1 `getRing`

`getRing(self) → Ring`

Return an object of a subclass of `Ring`, to which the polynomial belongs.
(This method overrides the definition in `RingElementProvider`)

4.31.1.2 `getCoefficientRing`

`getCoefficientRing(self) → Ring`

Return an object of a subclass of `Ring`, to which the all coefficients belong.
(This method overrides the definition in `RingElementProvider`)

4.31.1.3 `shift_degree_to`

`shift_degree_to(self, degree: integer) → polynomial`

Return polynomial whose degree is the given `degree`. More precisely, let $f(X) = a_0 + \dots + a_n X^n$, then `f.shift_degree_to(m)` returns:

- zero polynomial, if `f` is zero polynomial
- $a_{n-m} + \dots + a_n X^m$, if $0 \leq m < n$
- $a_0 X^{m-n} + \dots + a_n X^m$, if $m \geq n$

(This method is inherited from `OrderProvider`)

4.31.1.4 `split_at`

`split_at(self, degree: integer) → polynomial`

Return tuple of two polynomials, which are split at the given degree. The term of the given degree, if exists, belongs to the lower degree polynomial.
(This method is inherited from `OrderProvider`)

4.31.2 DomainPolynomial – polynomial over domain

Initialize (Constructor)

`DomainPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, coeffring: CommutativeRing, **keywords: dict)`
`→ DomainPolynomial object`

Initialize a polynomial over the given domain `coeffring`.

In addition to the basic polynomial operations, it has pseudo division methods.

This class inherits **RingPolynomial** and **PseudoDivisionProvider**.

The type of the `coefficients` is **termint**. `coeffring` is an instance of descendant of **CommutativeRing** which satisfies `coeffring.isdomain()`.

Methods

4.31.2.1 pseudo_divmod

pseudo_divmod(self, other: *polynomial*) → tuple

Return a tuple (Q, R) , where Q, R are polynomials such that:

$$d^{\deg(f)-\deg(\text{other})+1}f = \text{other} \times Q + R,$$

where d is the leading coefficient of **other**.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.31.2.2 pseudo_floordiv

pseudo_floordiv(self, other: *polynomial*) → *polynomial*

Return a polynomial Q such that:

$$d^{\deg(f)-\deg(\text{other})+1}f = \text{other} \times Q + R,$$

where d is the leading coefficient of **other**.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.31.2.3 pseudo_mod

pseudo_mod(self, other: *polynomial*) → *polynomial*

Return a polynomial R such that:

$$d^{\deg(f)-\deg(\text{other})+1}f = \text{other} \times Q + R,$$

where d is the leading coefficient of **other**.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.31.2.4 exact_division

exact_division(self, other: *polynomial*) → *polynomial*

Return quotient of exact division.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.31.2.5 scalar_exact_division

**scalar_exact_division(self, scale: *CommutativeRingElement*)
→ *polynomial***

Return quotient by **scale** which can divide each coefficient exactly.

(This method is inherited from PseudoDivisionProvider)

4.31.2.6 discriminant

discriminant(self) → *CommutativeRingElement*

Return discriminant of the polynomial.

4.31.2.7 to_field_polynomial

to_field_polynomial(self) → *FieldPolynomial*

Return a *FieldPolynomial* object obtained by embedding the polynomial ring over the domain *D* to over the quotient field of *D*.

4.31.3 UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial – polynomial over UFD

Initialize (Constructor)

**UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial(coefficients: *terminit*,
coeffring: *CommutativeRing*, **keywords: *dict*)
→ *UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial* object**

Initialize a polynomial over the given UFD *coeffring*.

This class inherits from **DomainPolynomial**, **SubresultantGcdProvider** and **ContentProvider**.

The type of the *coefficients* is **terminit**. *coeffring* is an instance of descendant of **CommutativeRing** which satisfies *coeffring*.isufd().

4.31.3.1 content

content(self) → *CommutativeRingElement*

Return content of the polynomial.
(This method is inherited from *ContentProvider*)

4.31.3.2 primitive_part

primitive_part(self) → *UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial*

Return the primitive part of the polynomial.
(This method is inherited from *ContentProvider*)

4.31.3.3 subresultant_gcd

subresultant_gcd(self, other: *polynomial*) → *UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial*

Return the greatest common divisor of given polynomials. They must be in the polynomial ring and its coefficient ring must be a UFD.

(This method is inherited from SubresultantGcdProvider)

Reference: [13]Algorithm 3.3.1

4.31.3.4 subresultant_extgcd

subresultant_extgcd(self, other: *polynomial*) → *tuple*

Return (A, B, P) s.t. $A \times self + B \times other = P$, where P is the greatest common divisor of given polynomials. They must be in the polynomial ring and its coefficient ring must be a UFD.

Reference: [17]p.18

(This method is inherited from SubresultantGcdProvider)

4.31.3.5 resultant

resultant(self, other: *polynomial*) → *polynomial*

Return the resultant of **self** and **other**.

(This method is inherited from SubresultantGcdProvider)

4.31.4 IntegerPolynomial – polynomial over ring of rational integers

Initialize (Constructor)

IntegerPolynomial(coefficients: *terminit*, coeffring: *CommutativeRing*, **keywords: *dict*)
→ *IntegerPolynomial object*

Initialize a polynomial over the given commutative ring **coeffring**.

This class is required because special initialization must be done for built-in **int**.

This class inherits from **UniqueFactorizationDomainPolynomial**.

The type of the **coefficients** is **terminit**. **coeffring** is an instance of **IntegerRing**. You have to give the rational integer ring, though it seems redundant.

Methods

4.31.4.1 normalize

normalize(self) $\rightarrow$ *IntegerPolynomial*

Returns the unique normalized polynomial g which is associated to **self** (so $g = u * \text{self}$ for some unit u in **coeffring**).

For **IntegerPolynomial**, the leading coefficient of g is positive.

4.31.4.2 reduce

reduce(self, m: *modulus*) $\rightarrow$ *IntegerPolynomial*

Return the unique reduced polynomial g such that $g \equiv \text{self} \pmod{m}$ with integer modulus $m > 1$.

The coefficients of g are in $\text{range}((2 - m)//2, (2 + m)//2)$.

4.31.5 FieldPolynomial – polynomial over field

Initialize (Constructor)

FieldPolynomial(coefficients: *terminit*, coeffring: *Field*, **keywords: *dict*)
 $\rightarrow$ *FieldPolynomial object*

Initialize a polynomial over the given field **coeffring**.

Since the polynomial ring over field is a Euclidean domain, it provides divisions.

This class inherits from **RingPolynomial**, **DivisionProvider** and **ContentProvider**.

The type of the **coefficients** is **terminit**. **coeffring** is an instance of descendant of **Field**.

Operations

operator	explanation
<code>f // g</code>	quotient of floor division
<code>f % g</code>	remainder
<code>divmod(f, g)</code>	quotient and remainder
<code>f / g</code>	division in rational function field

Methods

4.31.5.1 content

content(self) → *FieldElement*

Return content of the polynomial.
(This method is inherited from `ContentProvider`)

4.31.5.2 primitive_part

primitive_part(self) → *polynomial*

Return the primitive part of the polynomial.
(This method is inherited from `ContentProvider`)

4.31.5.3 mod

mod(self, dividend: *polynomial*) → *polynomial*

Return *dividend* mod *self*.
(This method is inherited from `DivisionProvider`)

4.31.5.4 scalar_exact_division

**scalar_exact_division(self, scale: *FieldElement*)
→ *polynomial***

Return quotient by `scale` which can divide each coefficient exactly.
(This method is inherited from `DivisionProvider`)

4.31.5.5 gcd

gcd(self, other: *polynomial*) → *polynomial*

Return a greatest common divisor of *self* and *other*.

Returned polynomial is always monic.
(This method is inherited from `DivisionProvider`)

4.31.5.6 extgcd

extgcd(self, other: *polynomial*) → *tuple*

Return a tuple (*u*, *v*, *d*); they are the greatest common divisor *d* of two polynomials *self* and *other* and *u*, *v* such that

$$d = self \times u + other \times v$$

See **extgcd**.

(This method is inherited from `DivisionProvider`)

4.31.6 `FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial` – polynomial over finite prime field

Initialize (Constructor)

```
FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, coeffring:
FinitePrimeField, **keywords: dict)
    → FinitePrimeFieldPolynomial object
```

Initialize a polynomial over the given commutative ring *coeffring*.

This class inherits from **FieldPolynomial** and **PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider**.

The type of the *coefficients* is **terminit**. *coeffring* is an instance of descendant of **FinitePrimeField**.

Methods

4.31.6.1 `mod_pow` – powering with modulus

```
mod_pow(self, polynom: polynomial, index: integer)  
→ polynomial
```

Return $\text{polynom}^{\text{index}} \bmod \text{self}$.

Note that `self` is the modulus.
(This method is inherited from `PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider`)

4.31.6.2 `pthroot`

```
pthroot(self) → polynomial
```

Return a polynomial obtained by sending X^p to X , where p is the characteristic. If the polynomial does not consist of p -th powered terms only, result is nonsense.

(This method is inherited from `PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider`)

4.31.6.3 `squarefree_decomposition`

```
squarefree_decomposition(self) → dict
```

Return the square free decomposition of the polynomial.

The return value is a dict whose keys are integers and values are corresponding powered factors. For example, If

Examples

```
>>> A = A1 * A2**2  
>>> A.squarefree_decomposition()  
{1: A1, 2: A2}.
```

(This method is inherited from `PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider`)

4.31.6.4 `distinct_degree_decomposition`

```
distinct_degree_decomposition(self) → dict
```

Return the distinct degree factorization of the polynomial.

The return value is a dict whose keys are integers and values are corresponding product of factors of the degree. For example, if $A = A1 \times A2$, and all irreducible

factors of $A1$ having degree 1 and all irreducible factors of $A2$ having degree 2, then the result is: {1: $A1$, 2: $A2$ }.

The given polynomial must be square free, and its coefficient ring must be a finite field.

(This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.31.6.5 split_same_degrees

split_same_degrees(self, degree:) → *list*

Return the irreducible factors of the polynomial.

The polynomial must be a product of irreducible factors of the given degree. (This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.31.6.6 factor

factor(self) → *list*

Factor the polynomial.

The returned value is a list of tuples whose first component is a factor and second component is its multiplicity.

(This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.31.6.7 isirreducible

isirreducible(self) → *bool*

If the polynomial is irreducible return **True**, otherwise **False**.

(This method is inherited from PrimeCharacteristicFunctionsProvider)

4.31.7 polynomial – factory function for various polynomials

polynomial(coefficients: *terminit*, coeffring: *CommutativeRing*)
→ *polynomial*

Return a polynomial.

†One can override the way to choose a polynomial type from a coefficient ring, by setting:

```
special_ring_table[coeffring_type] = polynomial_type
```

before the function call.

4.32 poly.univar – univariate polynomial

- Classes
 - †**PolynomialInterface**
 - †**BasicPolynomial**
 - **SortedPolynomial**

This poly.univar using following type:

polynomial :

polynomial is an instance of some descendant class of **PolynomialInterface** in this context.

4.32.1 PolynomialInterface – base class for all univariate polynomials

Initialize (Constructor)

Since the interface is an abstract class, do not instantiate.
The class is derived from **FormalSumContainerInterface**.

Operations

operator	explanation
$f * g$	multiplication ¹
$f ** i$	powering

Methods

4.32.1.1 differentiate – formal differentiation

differentiate(self) → *polynomial*

Return the formal differentiation of this polynomial.

4.32.1.2 downshift_degree – decreased degree polynomial

downshift_degree(self, slide: *integer*) → *polynomial*

Return the polynomial obtained by shifting downward all terms with degrees of **slide**.

Be careful that if the least degree term has the degree less than **slide** then the result is not mathematically a polynomial. Even in such a case, the method does not raise an exception.

†f.downshift_degree(slide) is equivalent to f.**upshift_degree**(-slide).

4.32.1.3 upshift_degree – increased degree polynomial

upshift_degree(self, slide: *integer*) → *polynomial*

Return the polynomial obtained by shifting upward all terms with degrees of **slide**.

†f.upshift_degree(slide) is equivalent to f.term_mul((slide, 1)).

4.32.1.4 ring_mul – multiplication in the ring

ring_mul(self, other: *polynomial*) → *polynomial*

Return the result of multiplication with the **other** polynomial.

4.32.1.5 scalar_mul – multiplication with a scalar

scalar_mul(self, scale: *scalar*) → *polynomial*

Return the result of multiplication by scalar **scale**.

4.32.1.6 term_mul – multiplication with a term

term_mul(self, term: *term*) → *polynomial*

Return the result of multiplication with the given **term**. The **term** can be given as a tuple (degree, coeff) or as a polynomial.

4.32.1.7 square – multiplication with itself

```
square(self) → polynomial
```

Return the square of this polynomial.

4.32.2 BasicPolynomial – basic implementation of polynomial

Basic polynomial data type. There are no concept such as variable name and ring.

Initialize (Constructor)

```
BasicPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, **keywords: dict)  
→ BasicPolynomial
```

This class inherits and implements **PolynomialInterface**.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**.

4.32.3 SortedPolynomial – polynomial keeping terms sorted

Initialize (Constructor)

```
SortedPolynomial(coefficients: terminit, _sorted: bool=False,  
**keywords: dict)  
→ SortedPolynomial
```

The class is derived from **PolynomialInterface**.

The type of the coefficients is **terminit**. Optionally `_sorted` can be True if the coefficients is an already sorted list of terms.

Methods

4.32.3.1 degree – degree

`degree(self) → integer`

Return the degree of this polynomial. If the polynomial is the zero polynomial, the degree is -1 .

4.32.3.2 leading_coefficient – the leading coefficient

`leading_coefficient(self) → object`

Return the coefficient of highest degree term.

4.32.3.3 leading_term – the leading term

`leading_term(self) → tuple`

Return the leading term as a tuple (degree, coefficient).

4.32.3.4 †ring_mul_karatsuba – the leading term

`ring_mul_karatsuba(self, other: polynomial) → polynomial`

Multiplication of two polynomials in the same ring. Computation is carried out by Karatsuba method.

This may run faster when degree is higher than 100 or so. It is off by default, if you need to use this, do by yourself.

Bibliography

- [1] IPython. <http://ipython.scipy.org/>.
- [2] KANT/KASH. <http://www.math.tu-berlin.de/~kant/kash.html>.
- [3] Magma. <http://magma.maths.usyd.edu.au/magma/>.
- [4] Maple. <http://www.maplesoft.com/>.
- [5] Mathematica. <http://www.wolfram.com/products/mathematica/>.
- [6] matplotlib. <http://matplotlib.sourceforge.net/>.
- [7] mpmath. <http://code.google.com/p/mpmath/>.
- [8] NZMATH. <https://nzmath.sourceforge.io/>.
- [9] PARI/GP. <http://pari.math.u-bordeaux.fr/>.
- [10] SIMATH. <http://tnt.math.se.tmu.ac.jp/simath/> (closed site).
- [11] Janice S. Asuncion. Integer factorization using different parameterizations of Montgomery's curves. Master's thesis, Tokyo Metropolitan University, 2006.
- [12] J. Brillhart and J. L. Selfridge. Some factorizations of $2^n \pm 1$ and related results. *Math. Comp.*, Vol. 21, pp. 87–96, 1967.
- [13] Henri Cohen. *A Course in Computational Algebraic Number Theory*. GTM138. Springer, 1st. edition, 1993.
- [14] G. E. Collins and M. J. Encarnación. Improved techniques for factoring univariate polynomials. *Journal of Symbolic Computation*, Vol. 21, pp. 313–327, 1996.
- [15] Richard Crandall and Carl Pomerance. *Prime Numbers*. Springer, 1st. edition, 2001.
- [16] Ivan Bjerre Damgård and Gudmund Skovbjerg Frandsen. Efficient algorithms for the gcd and cubic residuosity in the ring of Eisenstein integers. *Journal of Symbolic Computation*, Vol. 39, No. 6, pp. 643–652, 2005.

- [17] Yuuji Kida. Integral basis and decomposition of primes in algebraic fields (Japanese). <http://www.rkmath.rikkyo.ac.jp/~kida/intbasis.pdf>.
- [18] D. H. Lehmer. Tests for primality by the converse of Fermat's theorem. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.*, Vol. 33, pp. 327–340, 1927.
- [19] H. W. Lenstra, Jr. Miller's primality test. *Information processing letters*, Vol. 8, No. 2, 1979.
- [20] Teiji Takagi. *Lectures on Elementary Number Theory (Japanese)*. Kyoritsu Shuppan Co., Ltd., 2nd. edition, 1971.
- [21] Lawrence C. Washington. *Elliptic Curves: Number Theory and Cryptography*. DISCRETE MATHEMATICS AND ITS APPLICATIONS. CRC Press, 1st. edition, 2003.
- [22] André Weiler. $(1 + i)$ -ary gcd computation in $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ as an analogue to the binary gcd algorithm. *Journal of Symbolic Computation*, Vol. 30, No. 5, pp. 605–617, 2000.